

arrows NX

INSTRUCTION MANUAL '17.11

Introduction

Thank you for purchasing "F-01K" mobile terminal.

Before using your terminal, or when necessary, read this manual to ensure safe use and handling.

Learning operations

クイックスタートガイド (Quick start guide) (included with the terminal) (in Japanese only)

This guide provides information of parts names and functions

"Instruction Manual" application (e-manual) (installed in the terminal) (in Japanese only)

This manual provides detailed information and operations of the functions

<Operation steps> From the Home screen, ☐☐→[Instruction Manual]

When activating for the first time, follow the on-screen instructions to download "Instruction Manual" application.

If you delete "Instruction Manual" application, you can access Google Play website from Play Store to install again.
*Operation steps> From the Home screen, [Play Store] → Search "取扱説明書 (Instruction Manual) F-01K" and select "取扱説明書 (Instruction Manual)" application→[INSTALL]

"INSTRUCTION MANUAL" (PDF file)

This manual provides detailed information and operations of the functions

〈From PC〉 https://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/support/trouble/manual/download/f01k/index.html

*You can download the latest information. URL and contents are subject to change without prior notice

Viewing this manual

- In this manual, "F-01K" mobile terminal is usually referred to as "the terminal".
- The images or illustration used in this manual are examples.
 They may differ from the actual displays.
- In this manual, explanations and screen images for terminal color "Blue Black", "docomo LIVE UX" as Home application and "Blue Black" as Kisekae are provided.
- In this manual, "authenticate" indicates the operating procedure for entering security code or performing iris authentication depending on functions.
- Unauthorized copying of parts of or this entire manual is prohibited.
- The contents in this manual, URL and contents are subject to change without prior notice.

Basic package

■ F-01K



■ クイックスタートガイド (Quick start guide) (in Japanese only)

ご利用にあたっての注意事項 (Notes and instructions for use) (in Japanese only)



■ TV antenna cable F01



 You can check or purchase optional accessories compatible with the terminal (optional) in the DOCOMO online shop. https://www.mydocomo.com/onlineshop/options/ index.html (In Japanese only)

Contents

Basic package Before using the terminal Precautions (Always follow these directions) Handling precautions1 Waterproofness/Dustproofness, shock resistance	
Before using the terminal	30
Part names and functions	30
docomo nano UIM card	
microSD card	33
Charging	35
Turning power on/off	
Basic operation	37
Character entry	41
Initial settings	48
Indicator LED	49
Screen/Icon	49
Task manager	56
Split screen	56
Switching the home applications	
docomo LIVE UX	58
Home screen	
Application list	
Backup and restoration of Home screen	
packup and restoration of nome screen	

My MagazineInformation of home application	66
Phone	67
Making a call/video call Receiving a call/video call	
Operation during a call	
Recent calls Phone memo	
Call settingsPhonebook	73
Mail/Browser	80
docomo mail	80
Messaging (SMS)	
NX! Mail	
Gmail	
Early warning "Area Mail" Chrome	
Applications	
dメニュー (dmenu)	
dmarket	
Play Store	
Osaifu-Keitai	
TV (Full Seg/1Seg)	
Album-Scene	

.ocation data/GPS 117 Schedule 119 Clock 120 Calculator 122 Search 122 Jocomo Data Copy 123	Useful tools 1 Date & time 1 Accessibility 1 About phone 1	16 16
123	File management16	38
Settings 126 Setting menu 126 Vi-Fi 127	Storage (Internal storage)	16
Data usage132 Airplane mode133	Data communication17	7(
Tethering 133 IPN (Virtual Private Network) 135 Italiular networks 136 Italiular networks reset 137 Italiular networks with several personal several personal person	Bluetooth® communication	17 7! 17
Storage144 Battery144	Connecting with other devices1	17
Memory 145 Jsers 145 Gestures 146 Gocomo service/cloud 146 Gecurity 147 Accounts 158 Google 159 Janguages & input 160 Backup & reset 161	Overseas use	18 18 18 18

Appendix/Index	186
Troubleshooting (FAQ)	186
Anshin Enkaku Support	193
Warranty and After-Sales Service	194
Software update	196
Main specifications	199
Specific Absorption Rate (SAR) of Mobile Phones	203
Export Administration Regulations	208
Intellectual Property Right	208
SIM unlock	211
Index	212

Before using the terminal

- The terminal supports LTE, W-CDMA, GSM/GPRS and Wireless LAN Systems.
- Since the terminal uses wireless signal, it may not be able to use in a location with no signal reception such as a tunnel, underground, a building, an outdoor location with weak or poor signal reception, or a location outside of the LTE and FOMA service areas. Even when you are high up in a tall building or condominium and nothing blocks your view outside, your terminal may not be able to receive or transmit signals. Also, communication may be interrupted even when there are strong radio waves with 4 signal status icons on the terminal and you are not moving (traveling).
- Since the terminal uses wireless signal, there are possibilities that a third party may intercept your telephone call. However, LTE, W-CDMA, and GSM/GPRS systems support the privacy function covering all telephone calls automatically. Therefore, even a third party intercepts your telephone call, the third party can hear nothing but the noise
- Your terminal encodes voice communication as digital data.
 When you are operating your terminal while moving to a location subject to weaker radio wave conditions, the transmitted digital data may not be correctly decoded and as a result the decoded voice may differ somewhat from the actual voice.

- The terminal supports function with which users and guests can use the terminal. Therefore, some services or applications recognize them as the same user even after the user is switched. Note that DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for any loss or troubles the customer or the third party may be incurred by using the function.—P145
- Regularly take a memo of the information you registered in the terminal or store it in the external memories such as microSD card or PC. DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for any loss of your data caused by malfunction, repair, change to a new model or any other reasons.
- In the terminal, as it is for a PC, some applications or Web sites that you install may give instability of the operation, or may send your location information or personal information registered to the terminal to outside via the Internet and the information may be used improperly. Please thoroughly check a provider and operation status of the application or Web site, etc. which you want to use beforehand and then use it
- The terminal has FOMA Plus-Area and FOMA HIGH-SPEED Area support.
- You can use the terminal only with a docomo nano UIM card. If you have a docomo mini UIM card, docomo UIM card, or FOMA card, bring it to a docomo Shop to replace it with a docomo nano UIM card.
- The terminal does not support public mode (drive mode).
- The terminal automatically performs communication for synchronizing data, checking the latest software version, and maintaining a connection with the server, and for other purposes. Additionally, when you download applications or watch video etc, a large amount of packet communication charges are executed. Therefore, it is highly recommended to use packet pack or packet flat-rate service.

- Depending on the applications or service you use, packet communication charge may be applied even in Wi-Fi communication.
- The software on the terminal can be updated with the latest information.→P196
- Improving the terminals quality or upgrading operation system may be included in the software update. And some applications used in the previous version may not be available or some unintended bugs may occur after software undate.
- Display is manufactured by taking advantage of highly advanced technology but some dots may be always or never lit. Note that, this shows characteristics of liquid crystal displays and not defects in the terminals.
- For commercially available option devices, DOCOMO is not liable to any failures or the malfunctions.
- When the memory space of the microSD card or the terminal is low, running applications may not operate normally. In that case, delete the saved data.
- Applications and service contents are subject to change without prior notice.
- For using services and applications provided by the third party's including the applications provided by Google LLC, confirm the terms and conditions specified by Google™ or the providers. DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for any malfunctions resulting from the services and applications.
- When the terms of use screen appears, follow the on-screen instructions.
- If your terminal is lost, change your each account password using a PC to prevent other persons from using Google services such as Gmail™ or Google Play, or SNS, etc.
- Set security unlocking method to ensure security of the terminal in case of its loss. →P150

- The terminal supports only sp-mode, mopera U and Business mopera Internet. Other providers are not supported.
- If you want to use tethering, subscription to Packet Pack/ packet flat-rate service is strongly recommended.
- For details on usage fee, refer to NTT DOCOMO website.

Precautions (Always follow these directions)

- Before using your terminal, or when necessary, read the precautions below to ensure safe use and handling.
- These precautions are intended to protect you and others around you. Read and follow them carefully to avoid injury, damage to the terminal or damage to property.
- The signs below differentiate between the levels of danger that can occur if the terminal is not used within the specified guidelines.

⚠ DANGER	This sign denotes that "death or serious injury (*1) may directly result from improper use".
WARNING	This sign denotes that "death or serious injury (*1) may result from improper use".
A CAUTION	This sign denotes that "minor injury (*2) or damage to property (*3) may result from improper use".

*1 Serious injury: This refers to loss of sight, injury, burns (highand low-temperature), electric shock, broken bones, injuries with residual aftereffects from poisoning, etc., and injuries requiring hospital admission for treatment or long term hospital attendance as an outpatient.

- *2 Minor injury: This refers to injuries, burns (high- and low-temperature), electric shock, etc. that do not require hospital admission for treatment or long-term hospital attendance as an outnatient.
- *3 Physical damage: This refers to extended damage to buildings, furniture, livestock, pets, etc.
- The symbols below show specific directions.

$\overline{}$	
$\langle \rangle$	Th
	pr
Don't	

This symbol denotes that the action is



This symbol denotes that disassembling the phone or its components is not allowed.



This symbol denotes that using the phone or its components in a bathroom or other highly humid area is not allowed



This symbol denotes that using the phone or its components with wet hands is not allowed



This symbol denotes that an instruction must be obeyed at all times.



This symbol denotes that the equipment should be unplugged.

■ Precautions contain the description below	·.
Handling the terminal, adapter, docomo nano UII	M card, and
TV antenna cable (common)	8
Handling the terminal	10
Handling the adapter	13
Handling the docomo nano UIM card	15
Handling mobile phones near electronic medical	equipment
	15
Material list	16

Handling the terminal, adapter, docomo nano UIM card, and TV antenna cable (common)

⚠ DANGER



Do not use, store or leave the terminal in hot places (e.g. by the fire, near a heater, under a kotatsu or futon, in direct sunlight, in a car in the hot sun).

May cause fire, burns, injuries, or electric shock.



Do not put the terminal into or near a heating cooking device such as a microwave oven or IH cooker, or high-pressure container such as a pressure cooker.

May cause fire, burns, injuries, or electric shock.



Do not put sand, dirt, or mud on the terminal or put it on them directly. Do not touch the terminal with hands to which sand or others adhere.

May cause fire, burns, injuries, or electric shock, For the waterproof and dustproof functions, refer to the following.

→P23 "Waterproofness/Dustproofness, shock resistance"



Do not charge when the terminal is wet with water (drinking water perspiration seawater urine of net animals etc.)

May cause fire hurns injuries or electric shock For the waterproof function, refer to the following →P23 "Waterproofness/Dustproofness shock resistance"



Do not subject the terminal to strong pressure or break the terminal. Especially when bringing the terminal putting in a pocket of clothes, do not let the terminal hit against surroundings or being put between the objects.

May cause fire, burns, injury, etc. resulting from the damage of the internal battery

- The following are examples that you should be careful of:
- Sitting or squatting with the terminal put in a pocket of traucare ar ekirt
- Putting the terminal in a pocket of outer wear and catching them in a door or a door of car
- Stepping on the terminal on a soft object such as a sofa. bed, or bedding, or on a floor



Do not disassemble or remodel the equipment. May cause fire, burns, injuries, or electric shock.



Do not let the terminal get wet with water (drinking water, perspiration, seawater, urine of No liquids pet animals, etc.).

> May cause fire, burns, injuries, or electric shock. For the waterproof function, refer to the following. →P23 "Waterproofness/Dustproofness, shock resistance"



Do not allow liquid (drinking water perspiration seawater urine of net animals etc.) to come into No liquids the charging lack, external connection lack.

May cause fire hurns injuries or electric shock For the waterproof function, refer to the following →P23 "Waterproofness/Dustproofness shock resistance"



Use the optional products specified by NTT DOCOMO for your terminal

Using unspecified devices may cause fire, burns, electric chack atc

♠WARNING



Do not drop, trample, or throw the terminal or give a strong force or vibration to it.

May cause fire hurns injuries or electric shock



Keep conductive materials (metal pieces, pencil lead, etc.) from coming in contact with the charging lack or external connection lack, or dust into the terminal

Not doing so may cause fire, burns, injuries, or electric shock



Do not cover or wrap the terminal with a blanket etc. while using or charging.

May cause fire or hurns



If charging is not complete after the specified charging time has passed, stop charging.

Not doing so may cause fire, burns, or injuries due to overcharge.



Make sure to turn off the terminal or ston charging before you get close to places like a gas station where a flammable gas or dust can be generated

Not doing so may cause the gas to ignite or fire When using Osaifu-Keitai in a place such as a gas station turn OFF the terminal before using it

(When NEC/Osaifu-Keitai lock is set, cancel the lock before turning OFF the terminal)



If the equipment gives off a strange smell, noise, smake or overheats or becomes discolored or deformed during use, charge, or storage. perform the following operations.

- Remove the power plug from a power outlet or. accessory socket.
- Power off the terminal

Not doing the above operations may cause fire, burns. injuries, or electric shock.

ACAUTION



Do not use the damaged terminal. May cause fire, burns, or injuries.



Do not leave the terminal on unstable or sloping surfaces. Be careful especially while the vibrator is set

The terminal may fall and cause injuries.



Do not store the equipment in extremely humid, dusty or hot areas.

Opp't May cause fire, burns, or electric shock.

For the waterproof and dustproof functions, refer to the following.

→P23 "Waterproofness/Dustproofness, shock resistance"



When children use the terminal, do not let them use incorrectly without instruction by an adult for proper use.

May cause injuries



Do not store the terminal within the reach of small children.

't May cause accidental ingestion, injury, electric shock etc.



Be careful when using the terminal continuously for a long time or charging as it gets hot. Also, avoid touching the terminal for a long time by falling asleep unintentionally.

When using applications, call, data communication, TV, video, etc. for a long time or when charging the battery, the terminal and adapter may become hot. Directly touching a hot part for a long time, you may have redness, itching or rash on your skin, or it may result in low-temperature burns depending on your constitution and/or health condition

Handling the terminal

↑ DANGER



Do not throw the terminal into fire or apply heat.

)on't



Do not apply excessive force to the terminal such as sticking a nail, hitting with a hammer, or stepping on.

May cause fire burns injury etc.



If the internal substance of the terminal etc. gets into your eyes or mouth, immediately rinse your eyes with clean water and see a doctor right away.

Not doing so may cause blindness, medical problem, etc. due to effects of the internal substance of the terminal etc.

AWARNING



Do not turn on the light by getting the lighting part closer to other persons eyes. Keep enough distance especially from small children.

Not doing so may impair eyesight. Also, you may get dazzled or surprised causing an accident.



Do not lighten or flash the light to drivers of cars, etc.

on't May disturb driving and cause an accident, etc.



Do not watch the display that blinks repeatedly for a long time.

May cause spasm, loss of consciousness, etc.



Do not allow a foreign substance such as water and other liquids (drinking water, sweat, seawater, urine of pet animals, etc.), metal parts, or flammables to get in the slot of the slot cap of the terminal

Insert the docomo nano UIM card or the microSD memory card in the correct place and in correct direction

May cause fire, burns, injuries, or electric shock.



Do not expose the camera lens to direct sunlight for an extended period.

May cause fire, burns, injuries, etc. by the light-collecting



Turn off the terminal or put it in Airplane mode before boarding an airplane.

The use of mobile phones on airplanes is restricted. Follow the instructions of each airline.

The radio wave from the terminal may adversely affect onboard electronic equipment.

Prohibited acts related to mobile phone usage on an airplane may be punished by law.



When using the terminal in a medical facility, be sure to observe the regulations of the facility.

Turn off the terminal in a place where the use is prohibited.

The radio wave from the terminal may affect electronic equipment and electronic medical equipment.



When using the handsfree call, ringtone is ringing loud, or in the standby mode, be sure to keep this terminal off of the ears.

Also, when playing games, video, or music with an earphone microphone connected to the terminal, adjust the volume to the proper level. Loud sound is emitted from the terminal when calling with

hands-free set.

Even in standby mode, a ringtone or alarm may sound

suddenly.

Hearing loud sound for a long time continuously may affect your ears such as difficulty in hearing.

Also, too loud sound hinders you from hearing ambient sound and it may cause an accident.



If you have weak heart, be careful when setting the incoming vibrate alert (vibration) or alert volume setting.

Sudden incoming vibration or ringtone may astonish you and it may affect your heart.



When you use electronic medical equipment, check with the equipment manufacturer to determine how the device is affected by radio ways before using

The radio wave from the terminal may affect electronic medical equipment etc.



Turn the terminal OFF near high-precision electronic control equipment or electronic equipment using low-power signals

The radio wave from the terminal may interfere with the operation etc. of electronic devices or equipment.

Examples of electronic equipment to avoid Hearing aids, implanted pacemakers or defibrillators, other electronic medical equipment, and other automatic control equipment. Users wearing implanted pacemakers or defibrillators, or other electronic medical equipment should check with the manufacturer or sales outlet about the effect of radio frequencies on the equipment.



When the display or camera lens is accidentally broken, be careful of broken glass or exposed internal parts of the terminal.

If you mistakenly touch broken or exposed parts, you may have burns, injuries, or electric shock.



If the internal battery leaks or gives off a strange smell, immediately remove the terminal from the vicinity of open flames.

The vapors from leaking battery fluid may ignite, fire or explode.



Be careful not to let your pet bite the terminal.

May cause fire, burns, injury, etc. resulting from the damage of the internal battery.

ACAUTION



Do not swing the terminal around by holding a strap, etc.

Don't N

May cause accident such as injuries.



When using the motion sensor, check the safety around you, hold the terminal firmly, and do not shake it unnecessarily.

May cause accident such as injuries

S Don't

If the display breaks and the fluid etc. leaks out from inside, do not let the fluid contact with the skin on your face or hands or clothes.

May cause eye or skin problems.

If the fluid etc. enters your eyes or mouth, or contacts skin or clothes, immediately flush the contacted area with clean water.

If the fluid etc. enters your eyes or mouth, immediately see a doctor after flushing.



Do not discard the old terminal together with other garbage.



May cause fire, burns, injury, etc. Also, it may cause environmental destruction. Bring the unnecessary terminal into a sales outlet such as docomo Shop. If your local municipality has a recycling program, dispose of them as provided for.



If fluid etc. leaks out from the internal battery, do not let the fluid contact with the skin on your face or hands

May cause eye or skin problems

If the fluid etc. enters your eyes or mouth, or contacts skin or clothes, immediately flush the contacted area with clean water.

If the fluid etc. enters your eyes or mouth, immediately see a doctor after flushing.



To use the terminal in car, check with automobile manufacturer or dealer to determine how the device is affected by radio wayes before using.

In rare cases, the radio waves perore using.

In rare cases, the radio wave from the terminal may affect the vehicle's electronic equipment in some vehicle models. In that case, stop using the terminal immediately.



If you develop skin problems, stop using the terminal immediately, and see a doctor. The use of the terminal may cause itching, rashes, eczema, or other symptoms depending on the user's physical condition.

For materials of parts, refer to the following.
→P16"Material list"



Make sure that there is no adhered metal pieces (cutter blade, staples, etc.) as the earpiece/ speaker part of this terminal generates magnetism.

Not doing so may cause injuries, etc. due to adhered objects.



When watching the display screen, keep a certain distance from the display in a fully bright place.

Not doing so may reduce visual acuity.

Handling the adapter

MARNING



Do not use the adapter cord if it gets damaged.

May cause fire, burns, or electric shock.

Don't

 \bigcirc

Do not use the adapter in a bathroom or other highly humid area.

on't May cause fire, burns, or electric shock.



Always use the DC adapter with a negativeground vehicle. Do not plug it into a positiveground vehicle.

May cause fire, burns, or electric shock.



When it starts to thunder, do not touch adapter.

May cause electric shock.



Do not short-circuit the charging jack while it is connected to a power outlet or accessory socket. Do not touch the charging jack with your hands, finders. or any part of your body.

May cause fire, burns, or electric shock.



Do not place heavy objects on the adapter cord, or do not pull the cord with excessive force.

't May cause fire, burns, or electric shock.



When you insert and remove the AC adapter from power outlet, do not contact a metal strap or other metal objects with the jack.

May cause fire, burns, or electric shock.



Do not use a transformer for overseas travel (travel converter) as the AC adapter

May cause ignition, heating, or electric shock

Do not apply an excessive force on the connected parts when the adapter is connected to the terminal

May cause fire hurns injuries or electric shock



Do not touch the adapter cord, charging terminal, or power plug with wet hands.

No wet hands May cause fire, burns, or electric shock.



Only use with the specified power source and voltage.

When charging the terminal overseas, use AC adapter for global use.

If incorrect voltage is used, this may cause fire, burns or electric shock

AC adapter: 100V AC (Connect to an AC outlet for internal household use)

AC adapter for global use: Between 100V and 240V AC (Connect to the AC outlet for internal household use) DC adapter: 12V or 24V DC (specific for negative ground vehicle)



When replacing the DC adapter's fuse, replace it only with a specified fuse.

Replacing with a different type of fuse might cause fire. burns, electric shock, etc. For the specified fuse, see the provided instruction manual.



Wipe off any dust that accumulates on the power plua.

Not doing so may cause fire, burns, or electric shock.



When you connect the adapter to an outlet or accessory socket firmly connect it to the outlet Not doing so may cause fire hurns electric shock



When you disconnect the power plug from an outlet or accessory socket, do not pull the adapter cord with excessive force. Instead, hold the adapter to disconnect.

Not doing so may cause fire burns, electric shock



When you remove or insert the adapter from/to the terminal, do not pull the adapter cord with excessive force. Instead, remove or insert the adapter straight.

Not doing so may cause fire, burns, injuries, or electric shock



Immediately stop using the terminal if the external connection terminal is deformed. Do not use it by restoring the deformation.

May cause fire burns injuries or electric shock due to short circuit of the charging terminal.



Always remove the power plug of the adapter from an outlet or accessory socket when not using the adapter.

Not doing so may cause fire, burns, or electric shock.



Immediately disconnect the power plug from an outlet or accessory socket if liquid such as water (drinking water, sweat, seawater, urine of pet animals, etc.) is on the device.

Not doing so may cause fire, burns, injury, etc. due to short-circuit from the adhered liquid etc.



Always remove the power plug from an outlet or accessory socket when cleaning the equipment.

ACAUTION



Do not touch the adapters for a long time while they are connected to an outlet or accessory socket.

May cause burns

♦ Handling the docomo nano UIM card

ACAUTION



Be careful of the cut surface when handling a docomo nano UIM card as it may damage a part of your body such as fingers, etc.

The cut surface may be sharp and it may cause injury etc.

Handling mobile phones near electronic medical equipment

↑ WARNING



Wearers of medical equipment such as implanted pacemakers or defibrillators must carry and use the terminal at least 15 cm away from the implanted device.

The radio wave from the terminal may affect the performance of electronic medical equipment.



When electronic medical equipment other than implanted pacemakers or defibrillators are in use outside of medical facilities (such as in home care settings), check with the device manufacturer to determine how the device is affected by electrical signals.

The radio wave from the terminal may affect the performance of electronic medical equipment.



Make sure that the terminal will not emit any signals (turn off power, put it in Airplane mode, etc.) if within 15 cm of those around you, such as where crowded and you cannot move freely.

There may be wearers of medical equipment such as implanted pacemakers or defibrillators around you. The terminal's signals may affect the performance of electronic medical equipment.



When using the terminal in a medical facility, be sure to observe the regulations of the facility.

The radio wave from the terminal may affect the performance of electronic medical equipment.

5

♦ Material list

■ F-01K Terminal

Part		Material/Surface treatment
Display panel		Hardened glass/AF coating
Exterior case	Front case	Aluminum, PBT resin/Alumite treatment, none
	Back panel	PC-GF resin/Acrylic UV curing coating treatment
Out-camera panel, flash panel		PC resin/None
Power key/Fingerprint sensor		Epoxy resin/Acrylic UV curing coating treatment
Volume key		PA-GF resin/Acrylic UV curing coating treatment
Slot cap	Cap part exterior, a part of interior	Aluminum/Alumite treatment
	Cap part interior	PC resin, polyester elastomer resin, silicone resin/None
	Tray pin, pin cover	Stainless steel/None
	Tray	Aluminum/Alumite treatment
Stereo earphone jack		PA resin/None
IMEI sheet (Sheet, Bar code)		PET/None

Part	Material/Surface treatment
USB Type-C jack	Stainless steel/Nickel plating

■ TV antenna cable F01

Pa	rt	Material/Surface treatment
Cord		Olefinic elastomer/None
Earphone jack	Сар	Styrene elastomer/None
	Jack ring	Brass/Nickel base, gold-plating
Plug on the	Сар	Styrene elastomer/None
main unit	Jack	Brass/Nickel base, gold-plating
	Insulator	POM/None
	Molded part	PP/None

Handling precautions

General

fade

- F-01K is waterproof/dustproof; however, do not allow water or other liquid (drinking water, perspiration, seawater, urine of pet animals, etc.) or dust to enter into this terminal or to come in contact with included accessories or optional accessories.
 - The adapter and docomo nano UIM card are not waterproof/dustproof. Do not use in a bathroom or other highly humid area or do not let rain touch. Or putting them on your body, humidity of sweat may cause internal corrosion and malfunction. Malfunctions which are determined to be caused by water as result of inspections are not covered by the warranty. For repairs, contact "Technical Inquiries & Repairs" (in Japanese only) on the last page of this manual or DOCOMO specified repair office
- Clean the terminal with a dry soft cloth (such as a cloth for eveglasses).
 - Rubbing roughly may scratch the display.
 - Drops of water or dirt left on the display may cause stains.
- If the terminal is wiped with alcohol, paint thinner, benzine or detergent, the printing may disappear or color may
- On occasion, clean the lack, fingerprint sensor etc. to use it.
 - If the jack etc. is dirt, you may not use the terminal normally.
 - When cleaning, be careful not to damage the jack etc.

- Do not place the terminal near an air-conditioner outlet.
 - The rapid change in temperature may cause condensation,
- Do not apply excessive force to the terminal.
 - Putting the terminal into a tightly packed bag or sitting on the terminal in your pocket might cause malfunction or damage of the display, internal circuit board, internal hattery, etc.

And, if an external device is plugged into the external connection jack, malfunction or damage may result.

- Use the optional products specified by NTT DOCOMO for your terminal.
 - If you use optional products other than specified, it may cause malfunction or damage.
- Read the instruction manuals supplied with individual optional devices.
- Do not let the terminal or the accessory fall or do not give a strong impact to it.
 - May cause malfunction or damage.

♦ The terminal

- Do not press the display strongly or do not use sharppointed object when operating.
 - The display may get scratched and it may cause malfunction or damage.
- Avoid extreme high or low temperature.
 - Use the terminal where the temperature ranges between 5 and $40^\circ\mathbb{C}$ (limited to the temporary use in a bathroom etc. when temperature is above $36^\circ\mathbb{C}$) and humidity ranges between 45 and 85%.
- The terminal may affect land-line phones, TVs or radios in use nearby, so use it as far as possible from these appliances.

- Be sure to back up the data you saved in the terminal on a microSD card, PC, or cloud service, or keep a separate note.
 NTT DOCOMO is not liable for any loss of saved data.
- Do not plug an external device into the external connection jack at a slant, or do not pull it forcibly while it is plugged.
 - May cause malfunction or damage.
- It is not abnormal if the terminal becomes warm while in
- Do not leave the terminal with the camera lens in areas under strong direct sunlight.
- May cause discoloring or burn-in of elements.
- Use the terminal with the slot cap closed.
 - Not doing so may cause malfunction due to entering foreign objects such as water or other liquid (drinking water, perspiration, seawater, urine of pet animals, etc.) or dust to the terminal
- Do not subject the fingerprint sensor to strong impact or scratch the surface.
 - Doing so not only may cause a malfunction of the fingerprint sensor, but also authentication may become unavailable.
- While microSD card is being used, do not take the card out or do not turn off the terminal.
 - May cause data loss or malfunction.
- Do not let a magnetic card or magnetized object close to the terminal
 - Magnetic data in cash cards, credit cards, telephone cards, floppy disks, etc. may be erased.
 - Bringing strong magnetism near may cause malfunction of the terminal.

- Do not decorate the terminal with films or stickers.
 - May hinder the proper operations for functions using the
 - For a location of the proximity sensor, see the following.
 →P30"Part names and functions"
- The internal battery is not covered by the warranty because it is consumable.
 - The internal battery may swell out as it comes to near the end of its lifetime depending on the usage conditions. Replace the internal battery if the terminal has extremely short operation time on a full charge or when the internal battery is swelled out. For replacing internal battery, contact "Repairs (Inquiries/Request)" on the last page (in Jananess only) or DOCOMO-sneefied repair office.
- Charge the battery in an area within the proper ambient temperature range (5-35°C)
- The operation time provided by the internal battery varies by the operating environment and internal battery deterioration.
- When storing the terminal, avoid the following conditions so as not to deteriorate the performance or lifetime of the internal battery.
 - Storing under the state of the full charge (right after charging ends)
 - The battery has run out (the terminal cannot be turned on)
 The appropriate battery level for storing is about 40%.
- The terminal has the following type of internal battery.

Display	Battery type
Li-ion 00	Li-ion battery

Instructions for using the adapter

- Charge the battery in an area within the proper ambient temperature range (5-35°C).
- Do not charge the battery in the areas below.
- In areas of excessive humidity, dust or vibrations
- Near land-line phones or TV/radio
- It is normal for the adapter to become hot while charging.
 Continue to use it.
- When using the DC adapter for charging, keep the vehicle engine running.
 - The vehicle's battery could become flat.
- When using an outlet with a mechanism preventing unplugging, follow the handling instructions for that outlet.
- Do not give strong shock. Do not deform the charging terminal.
 - May cause malfunction.

♦ docomo nano UIM card

- Do not use excessive force to install/remove docomo nano LIIM card.
- Note that DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for malfunctions occurring as the result of inserting and using docomo nano UIM card with another IC card reader/writer.
- On occasion, clean the IC part to use it.
 - If the IC part is dirt, you may not use the terminal normally.
- For cleaning, use a soft, dry cloth (such as a cloth for eyeglasses) to wipe.
- Be sure to back up the data you saved in the docomo nano UIM card on a microSD card, PC, or cloud service, or keep a separate note.
- NTT DOCOMO is not liable for any loss of saved data.
- Take an expended docomo nano UIM card to a sales outlet such as a docomo Shop for proper disposal in order to protect the environment.
- Take care not to scratch, touch accidentally or short IC.
 - May cause data loss or malfunction.
- Do not drop docomo nano UIM card or subject it to impact.
 May cause malfunction.
- Do not bend docomo nano UIM card or place a heavy object on it.
 - May cause malfunction.
- Do not install docomo nano UIM card into the terminal with a label or sticker put on.
 - May cause malfunction.

♠ Rluetooth function

- The terminal is equipped with the security features, that are compliant with Bluetooth standards for communication via Bluetooth. However, depending on the settings, there may not be enough security. Be aware of security risks when using Bluetooth.
- DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for any information which may be leaked during communication via Bluetooth.
- Frequency bands
 Frequency bands used by the terminal Bluetooth function are as below.



- 1) 2.4 · Radio equipment that uses the 2400 MHz hand
- ② FH/XX: The modulation is the FH-SS method or other method (method other than DS-SS method/DS-FH method/FH-OFDM composite method/OFDM method)
- 3 1: The expected interference distance is 10 m or shorter.
 - : All bandwidths between 2400 MHz and 2483.5 MHz are used, and the bandwidth used by mobile object identification devices cannot be avoided.

Use of Bluetooth function is limited in some countries.

Confirm regulations of the country/region to use it.

To use in airplane, confirm with airline company in advance.

Cautions on using Bluetooth devices

In the bandwidth used by the terminal, in addition to home electric appliances such as a microwave oven and industrial/scientific/medical devices, in-plant radio stations used to identify mobile objects used in production lines of a factory that require a license, specified low power radio stations, or amateur radio stations that do not require a license (hereafter "other radio stations") can be in operation.

- 1. Before using the terminal, check whether "other radio stations" are in operation in your neighborhood.
- If radio wave interference occurs between the terminal and "other radio stations", use the terminal in a different location or "Turn the power OFF" to avoid the radio wave interference.
- 3. For details, contact "General Inquiries" on the last page of this manual.

♦ Wireless LAN (WLAN)

 Wireless LAN (WLAN) exchanges information using radio waves, and allows you to freely establish LAN connection if you are within an area where radio wave reaches. On the other side, if you communicate without appropriate security settings, communications may be intercepted or hacked by malicious parties. It is recommended to make necessary security settings on your judgment and responsibility.

• Wireless I AN

Do not use wireless LAN in a place where magnetized by electric products, AV, OA equipment, etc. or where electromagnetic wave is generated.

- If magnetism or electrostatic noise affects the terminal, noise may be increased or communication may not be available (especially when using microwave oven, it may affect the terminal).
- Using near TV or radio may cause poor reception or TV screen may be blurred.
- When multiple wireless LAN access points exist near the terminal and they use the same channel, search may not be performed correctly.

Frequency bands

The frequency band used by the terminal's wireless LAN function is written as follows:



- 1 2.4: Radio equipment that uses the 2400 MHz band.
- 2 DS: The modulation is the DS-SS method.
- ③ OF: The modulation is the OFDM method.

object identification devices can be avoided.

4: The expected interierence distance is 40 m or shorter.
 3: All bandwidths between 2400 MHz and 2483.5 MHz are used, and the bandwidth used by mobile.

Available channels vary by countries. To use WLAN overseas, check the conditions such as available frequency, regulation, etc. for the country.

To use in airplane, confirm with airline company in advance. When docomo nano UIM card is not inserted or when you are out of service area, channels 12, 13 of 2.4 GHz band and channels between 120 and 128 of 5 GHz band are not available regardless of whether you are in Japan or abroad.

Cautions on using 2.4 GHz devices

In the frequency band used by WLAN devices, in addition to home electric appliances such as a microwave oven and industrial/scientific/medical devices, in-plant radio stations for identification of mobile objects used in production lines of a factory (a license is required), specified low power radio stations (a license is not required), or amateur radio stations (a license is required) can be in operation.

- Before using this device, confirm that in-plant radio stations for identification of mobile objects, specified low power radio stations or amateur radio stations are not in operation in your neighborhood.
- 2. If this device generates harmful radio wave interference against in-plant radio stations for identification of mobile objects, change the using frequency promptly or stop using wireless LAN function, and contact "General Inquiries" on the last page of this manual, then consult about treatment for prevention of the interference (for example, installation of partitions etc.).
- If this device generates harmful radio wave interference against in-plant radio stations for identification of mobile objects or amateur radio stations, or if any trouble, contact "General Inquiries" on the last page of this manual.

Cautions on using 5 GHz devices

Using wireless LAN built-into the terminal in 5.2/5.3 GHz outside is prohibited by the Radio Law.

Channel numbers and frequency bands available in Japan are as follows.

- 5.2 GHz band : 5,180 to 5,240 MHz (36, 38, 40, 42, 44, 46, 48 Ch)
- 5.3 GHz band : 5,260 to 5,320 MHz (52, 54, 56, 58, 60, 62, 64 Ch)
- 5.6 GHz band: 5,500 to 5,700 MHz (100, 102, 104, 106, 108, 110, 112, 116, 118, 120, 122, 124, 126, 128, 132, 134, 136, 140 Ch)

◆ FeliCa and NFC reader/writer

- The FeliCa and NFC reader/writer, P2P function for the terminal handle delicate signals that require no radio station license
- They use 13.56 MHz frequency band. When the other FeliCa or NFC reader/writer, P2P function is used in the surroundings, keep the terminal away sufficiently from them

Before using, confirm that there are no radio stations using the same frequency band nearby.

To use in airplane, confirm with airline company in advance.
 Use is limited in some countries.

Confirm regulations of the country/region to use it.

CALITION

 Do not use a remodeled terminal Using a remodeled terminal violates the Radio I aw/Telecommunications Rucinose Act

The terminal is compliant with rules on the technical standard conformance of specified wireless equipment hased on the Radio Law/Telecommunications Rusiness Act and as a proof of it, the "Technical Compliance Mark are is depicted on the electronic nameplate of the terminal. You can check the electronic nameplate in the terminal as follows

From the Home screen, ₩→[Settings]→[System]→[About phone]→[Auth]

If you remodel the terminal by removing its screws, your certification of technical standard conformance becomes invalid

Do not use the terminal with its certification of technical standard conformance invalid as it violates the Radio Law/ Telecommunications Rusiness Act

- Be careful when you use the terminal while driving a car etc. There is a penalty for holding or using the terminal while drivina.
 - However, absolutely necessary cases such as rescue of a sick person or maintaining public's safety are exempted.
- . The FeliCa and NFC reader/writer functions are compliant with the wireless standards of Japan. Check the regulations of the country/region beforehand if you try to use the function overseas
- . Do not alter the basic software. Repairs may be refused as a modification of software.

Waterproofness/Dustproofness. shock resistance

F-01K has a waterproof equivalent to IPX5*1 and IPX8*2 as well as a dustrinof property equivalent to IP6X*3 on the condition that the slot can is securely attached. Also, the terminal comprises the shock resistant structure which passed the test*4 in accordance with United States Military . Standard

- IPX5 means that a phone keeps functioning after applying a jet flow of 12.5 L/min, from every direction from a distance of approximately 3 m for at least 3 minutes using water nozzle in 6.3 mm inner diameter
- For F-01K. IPX8 means that a phone keeps functioning after F-01K is slowly submerged to depth of 1.5 m in static tap water at room temperature, left there for 30 minutes and then taken out (Camera function cannot be used under water)
- IP6X, a degree of protection, indicates that the terminal can maintain its functionality to prevent dust particles from entering into the terminal even when it has been shaken for 8 hours in an apparatus containing dust particles 75 1/m or less in diameter.
- Carried out a drop test compliant with MIL-STD-810G w/ Change 1 Method 516.7-Shock set forth by the U.S. Department of Defense

	Drop test from 1.22 meters height to plywood (lauan) in 26 directions
Shock resistance	Apply 40G shock from 6 directions 3 times
	Immersion test at the depth of 1.5 meters for 30 minutes

Dustproofness (6- hours with specified wind speed)	Dust test for 6 hours consecutively (dust concentration of 10 \pm 7 g/m³, wind speed of 8.9 m/s)
Dustproofness (72- hours)	Dust test for 72 hours consecutively (6g/m²/day)
Salt water durability	Salt water durability test for 96 hours consecutively (2 cycles of 24 hours spraying of 5% salt water and 24 hours drying)
Dampproofness	High humidity test for 10 days consecutively (95% of humidity, 30-60 ℃)
Solar radiation resistance (continuity)	Solar radiation test for 24 hours consecutively (total 1,120 W/m²)
Solar radiation resistance (change of temperature)	Solar radiation test repeatedly for all humidity level with temperature difference (+49 degree difference) (3 cycles of 24 hour)
Vibration resistance	Vibration resistance test for 3 hours (1 hour for 3 directions)
Waterproofness (Wind and rain)	Wind and rain of 18m/s for 30 minutes
Raindrop	Raindrop from 1 meter height for 15 minutes
Heat resistance	Temperature durability test against -21 -50°C sudden changes of temperature for 3 hours consecutively

Operation at high- temperature (60°C fixed)	Operation environment : High temperature test at 60°C
Operation at high- temperature (change 32 - 49°C)	High temperature test of 3 cycles of temperature changes of 32 - 49°C
Storage at high- temperature (70°C fixed)	Storage environment : High temperature test at 70 $^{\circ}\mathrm{C}$
Storage at high- temperature (change 30 - 60°C)	High temperature test for 30 - 60℃ changes of temperature
Operation at low- temperature (-20℃ fixed)	Operation environment : Low temperature test at -20 $^{\circ}\!$
Storage at low- temperature (-30°C fixed)	Storage environment : Low temperature test at -30 $^{\circ}\!$
Operation at low pressure	Low pressure test for 1 hour consecutively (57.11 kPa/Approx. 4,572 m)
Storage at low pressure	Low pressure test for 1 hour consecutively (57.11 kPa/Approx. 4,572 m)
Freeze (-10°C condensation)	Condensation or mist at -10°C for 1 hour and operation check at 25°C, 95%RH (Freezing-thawing)
Freeze (-10°C freezing)	Freezing test with -10°C cooling water until 6 mm thick ice forms

Our tests which are in accordance with the procurement standard of 23 provisions established by the USA Department of Defense (MII-STD-810G) are implemented: drop, shock resistance, waterproofness (immersion), dustproofness (6hours with specified wind speed), dustproofness (72 hours). salt water durability dampproofness solar radiation resistance (continuity), solar radiation resistance (change of temperature), vibration resistance, waterproofness (Wind and rain), raindrop, heat resistance, operation at high-temperature (60°C fixed) operation at high-temperature (change 32 - 49°C) storage at high-temperature, storage at high-temperature (change 30 - 60°C), operation at low-temperature (-20°C fixed). storage at low-temperature (-30°C fixed), operation at low pressure, storage at low pressure, freeze (-10°C condensation), freeze (-10°C freezing) Performance of the terminal is confirmed at under the test environment, it does not guarantee the operation of actual use in every situation. Also, it does not guarantee the non-damage and trouble-free.

❖ What you can do with waterproofness of F-01K

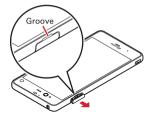
- You can use the terminal to talk or watch TV without using an umbrella in the rain (with a rainfall of about 20 mm per hour).
 - When your hands or the terminal are wet, avoid opening/ closing the slot cap.
- The terminal can be washed with tap water at room temperature.
 - With holding the slot cap not to open, wash the terminal with tap water without rubbing hard
 - Do not apply water flow stronger than allowed (→P23).
 - Do not use brush, sponge, soap, detergent, etc.
 - If mud or dirt has adhered to your terminal, shake it several times in tap water put in a washbowl or other container to rinse it off and then flush it with running water.
- Drain water in the specified steps (→P28) after washing.
- You can use the terminal in a bathroom.
 - Do not immerse the terminal into a bathtub. Also, do not use the terminal in hot water. May cause malfunction. If you should fall the terminal into the bathtub, immediately pick it up to drain water in specified procedure (~P28).
 - Never put the terminal in hot spring water or water containing soap, detergent or bath powder. In case the terminal gets wet with water other than tap water, wash it in the procedure above.
 - You can use the terminal within 2 hours in a bathroom where the temperature ranges between 5 and 45°C and humidity ranges between 45 and 99%.
 - Do not put hot water from a faucet or shower.

 Rapid temperature change may cause condensation. If you bring the terminal from a cold place to warm place such as a bathroom, wait until the terminal reaches the room temperature.

◆ To ensure waterproofness/dustproofness

To prevent water or dust from entering the terminal, be sure to observe the following points.

- For installing/removing docomo nano UIM card or microSD card, put your fingertip into the groove to open the slot cap and then draw the slot cap in the direction of the arrow horizontally and straight.
 - * When the slot cap is open, do not push the slot cap strongly downward. May cause a damage of the slot cap.



 After using, insert the slot cap in the direction of the arrow straight, firmly press opart. Make sure that there is no gap between the terminal and the slot cap.



- Make sure to firmly close the slot cap. Even a fine obstacle (one hair, one grain of sand, tiny fiber, etc.) which is put between contact surfaces may allow water or dust to enter.
- Do not poke the stereo earphone jack, USB Type-C jack, microphone, mouthpiece/microphone, speaker, back side microphone, slot cap, etc. with a sharp object.
- Do not let the terminal fall. Doing so may scratch the terminal, causing its waterproof/dustproof performance to degrade.
- The rubber seal in the slot cap plays an important part in waterproof/dustproof property. Do not damage or remove the rubber seals. Also, prevent dust from adhering to them.

It is recommended to replace the parts once every two vears to maintain the waterproof/dustproof performance regardless of whether an abnormality is present. Upon request DOCOMO will replace the parts for a fee. Take your terminal to a sales outlet such as a DOCOMO-

Important precautions

specified repair office.

Do not perform actions shown in the illustrations below.

<Fxample>



Using Span/Detergent/ Rath nowder

Washing with hrush/snonge



water flow





ocean water

hot spring

Observe the following precautions to use the terminal properly.

 Accessories and optional devices are not waterproof/ dustproof. Do not use the AC adapter in a bath room, shower room, kitchen, layatory, other wet area when the AC adapter is connected to the USB Type-C jack of the terminal.

- Do not apply water flow stronger than allowed (→P23). Even if F-01K is waterproof in IPX5 waterproof, water may enter inside from a damaged section and cause troubles such as electric shocks or corrosion of the hattery
- If the terminal gets wet with salt water, sea water, refreshing heverage etc or mud or soil adhered wash it immediately If they dry out, it is hard to remove the dirt and it may cause damage or malfunction
- Do not put the terminal in hot water, use it in a sauna or apply hot airflow (from a hair dryer etc.) to it.
- Do not move the terminal in water or slam the terminal against the surface of water
- When you use the terminal in swimming pool, obey rules of the facility
- The terminal does not float on water
- Do not leave water drop on the terminal. In a cold region. may cause the water to freeze, resulting in a malfunction.
- Do not leave water drop on the stereo earphone iack. mouthpiece/microphone, earpiece/speaker, speaker, back side microphone. Such water may interfere with talking.
- Do not apply tap water to the USB Type-C jack directly.
- Do not let water droplet remain on the USB Type-C jack.
- If the terminal gets wet with water or other liquids with the slot cap open, the liquid may get inside the terminal and cause electric shocks or malfunction. Stop using the terminal, turn the power OFF and contact a DOCOMOspecified repair office.
- If the rubber seal of slot cap is damaged or deformed. replace it at DOCOMO-specified repair office.

DOCOMO does not guarantee actual operations under all states. Malfunctions deemed to be caused by inappropriate operation by the customer are not covered by the warranty

♦ Draining water

When the terminal is wet, water may flow out after wiping it off: drain the water in the following steps.

 Hold the terminal firmly and wipe off moisture on the terminal surface and back side with dry, clean cloth etc.



② Shake the terminal approximately 20 times, firmly holding it, until there is no more water splattering.



③ Swing the terminal about 10 times against a dry, clean cloth etc. to wipe off any water remaining in the stereo earphone jack, USB Type-C jack, mouthpiece/microphone, earpiece/speaker, speaker, back side microphone, keys, etc.



- Wipe off water drained from the terminal with dry, clean cloth etc., and dry naturally.
 - Water, if any, remaining in the terminal may ooze up after wiping off.
 - Do not wipe off the remaining moisture in the gaps directly with a cotton swab etc.

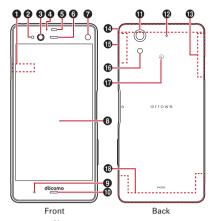
♦ Charging

Check the following during and after charging.

- Never try to charge the battery when the terminal is wet.
- When charging the battery after the terminal gets wet, adequately drain the terminal and then wipe off the remaining water with a dry, clean cloth or something similar
- Ensure that there are no water droplets or foreign objects on the USB Type-C jack before use.
- Do not use the AC adapter in a bathroom, shower room, kitchen, lavatory or other highly humid area. May cause fire or electric shock.
- Do not touch the AC adapter with wet hands. May cause electric shock.

Before using the terminal

Part names and functions



- Nameplate^{*1}→P195
- 2 In-camera → P104
- Iris registration camera → P153 Use for iris registration or iris authentication operation.

- Indicator LED → P49
- Proximity sensor/RGB sensor*2

Proximity sensor detects approach of your face during a call so as to prevent erroneous operation of the touch panel, or measures distance between the terminal and your eyes for iris authentication. RGB sensor senses ambient light condition or brightness and automatically adjusts the display backlight.

- 6 Earpiece/Speaker
- 7 Iris authentication LED→P153

Use for iris registration or iris authentication operation.

- 3 Display (Touch panel)

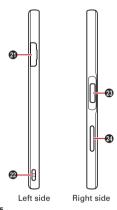
 9 Mouthpiece/microphone*3
- Speaker
- Out-camera → P104
- Back side microphone

Use for reducing noise during a call. Do not cover it.

- Wi-Fi/Bluetooth antenna section*4
- LTE/FOMA/GPS antenna section*4
- Wi-Fi antenna section*4
- Flash/Light
- 1 √2 mark → P93
- TE/FOMA antenna section*4



- Stereo earphone jack (waterproof)
- USB Type-C jack (waterproof)
 Use for charging, PC connection, etc.
 It supports USB Power Delivery.



- 3 Slot cap*5
- Strap hole

Power on/off and set/cancel sleep mode.

Volume kev

Adjust sound volume, or set/cancel Manner mode by pressing and holding the volume down key for 1 second or more.

- *1 A sticker bearing the CE mark, FCC ID, IMEI information, etc. is attached. Please do not peel off the sticker or remove the namenlate.
- *2 Putting a protective sheet or sticker on the sensor or covering the sensor with fingers may cause erroneous operation or incorrect sensing result.
- *3 Do not put stickers or a film on mouthpiece/microphone area. Also do not cover it with a finger. May cause erroneous operation or incorrect sensing result.
- *4 It is built-in the terminal. Covering around the antenna by the hand may affect the quality.
- *5 Install/remove after turning off the power. To avoid water or dust infiltration, be sure to close firmly.

■ Notes

- The back cover cannot be removed. Trying to remove it with excessive force may cause damage or malfunction.
- The battery is built into the terminal. You cannot replace it by yourself.

docomo nano UIM card

A docomo nano UIM card is an IC card that stores user information, such as the users phone number.

- You can use the terminal only with a docomo nano UIM card. If you have a docomo mini UIM card, docomo UIM card, or FOMA card, bring it to a docomo Shop to replace it with a docomo nano UIM card.
- If docomo nano UIM card is not inserted to the terminal, some functions such as making/receiving calls and sending/ receiving SMS are not available.
- For details on the docomo nano UIM card, refer to the instruction manual for docomo nano UIM card or NTT DOCOMO website

♦ Installing/Removing a docomo nano UIM card

- Install/remove after turning OFF the power.
- Be sure to use the slot cap when inserting a docomo nano UIM card. Inserting of a docomo nano UIM card alone may cause a malfunction.

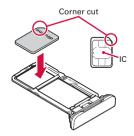
■ Installing

- Face the display side of the terminal up, put your fingertip into the groove and then open the slot cap→P26
- ② Draw the slot cap in the direction of the arrow straight and horizontally
 - The slot cap is designed to separate from the terminal.

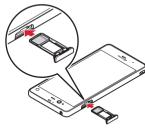


With the IC side facing down, set the docomo nano UIM card into the slot cap

- Check the orientation of card's corner.
- Be sure to fit the docomo nano UIM card into the slot cap so that it does not shift.



4 Check that the display side of the terminal faces up and then horizontally insert the slot cap in the direction of the arrow straight



- (5) Firmly press the slot cap to close→P26
- Removing
- Face the display side of the terminal up, put your fingertip into the groove and then open the slot cap → P26
- ② Draw the slot cap in the direction of the arrow straight and horizontally → P32
- 3 Remove the docomo nano UIM card from the slot cap
- ④ Check that the display side of the terminal faces up and then insert the slot cap in the direction of the arrow straight and horizontally→P33
- 5 Firmly press the slot cap to close→P26

✓INFORMATION

- When handling docomo nano UIM card, take care not to touch or scratch the IC. Also, be aware that trying to insert or remove the docomo nano UIM card using excessive force may cause it to break.
- For drawing/inserting the slot cap from/into the slot, do not draw or insert forcibly. Doing so may damage the slot cap.

Security code for the docomo nano

You can set up a security code called a PIN code for the docome page UIM card → P149

microSD card

Save the data of the terminal to a microSD card or import the data of a microSD card to the terminal.

microSD card

- The terminal supports microSD card of up to 2GB, microSDHC card and microSDHC UHS-I card of up to 32GB, microSDXC card and microSDXC UHS-I card of up to 256GB (as of November, 2017).
- Note that DOCOMO does not guarantee actual operations of all microSD cards. For information on compatible microSD cards, contact manufacturers of microSD cards.
- Do not power off the terminal while loading microSD card or editing the data of microSD card. Doing so may break the data or may affect operation of microSD card.

 Data transfered from the other device to a microSD card may not be displayed or played on the terminal. Data transfered from the terminal to a microSD card may not be displayed or played on other devices.

✓INFORMATION

- A microSDXC card can be used only SDXC devices. Inserting a microSDXC card into a device that does not support SDXC may damage or destroy the data saved on the microSDXC card. Do not insert one. If you want to reuse a microSDXC card on which data is destroyed, format the microSDXC card (all data will be erased) on an SDXC device.
- When copying data to/from a non-SDXC-compatible device, use a microSDHC card or microSD card complying with standards of device to share data.
- When using an application handling large amount of data such as video recording, use a high-speed microSD card (Class 10 or more is recommended)
- For speed class of microSD card, up to Class 10 can be available
- The terminal supports up to UHS Class 3 speed microSD card.

♦ Installing/Removing microSD card

- Install/remove after turning off the power.
- Be sure to use the slot cap when inserting a microSD card.

 Installing of a microSD card alone may cause a malfunction.

■ Installing

- 1 Face the display side of the terminal up, put your fingertip into the groove and then open the slot cap → P26
- ② Draw the slot cap in the direction of the arrow straight and horizontally→P32
- ③ With the metal side facing down, set the microSD card into the slot cap.
 - Be sure to fit the microSD card into the slot cap so as not to shift



- ④ Check that the display side of the terminal faces up and then insert the slot cap in the direction of the arrow straight and horizontally →P33
- 5 Firmly press the slot cap to close→P26

■ Removing

- 1) Face the display side of the terminal up nut your fingertin into the groove and then open the slot can→P26
- 2 Draw the slot can in the direction of the arrow straight and horizontally→P32
- 3 Remove the microSD card from the slot can
- (4) Check that the display side of the terminal faces up and then insert the slot cap in the direction of the arrow straight and horizontally→P33
- (5) Firmly press the slot cap to close→P26

Charging

Precautions on charging

- If you use applications while charging, it may take time to complete charging or charging may not complete due to drop-off of battery. To finish charging, end applications beforehand
- It is normal for the terminal or AC adapter to become warm while charging. When the terminal becomes warm, charging may stop temporarily for the safety. When the terminal becomes extremely hot, stop using immediately.
- If the temperature of the internal battery or the terminal becomes out of range for charging, a charging error is notified and the indicator LED blinks or turns off. Wait until the temperature is dropped and then retry charging.
- If charging takes for very long time, a charging error is notified and the indicator LFD turns off. Remove the terminal from the charger and retry.

- When the nower voltage of the internal hattery is abnormal. charging error occurs and the indicator LFD flashes Immediately exit any applications if you are using. Remove the terminal from the charger and charge it again in the proper manner. If you still fail to charge the terminal normally, remove the terminal from the charger, turn off the nower then contact "Technical Inquiries & Renairs" (in Japanese only) on the last page of this manual or a DOCOMO specified repair office.
- . When charging starts with the battery empty, the terminal may not be immediately activated after turning the power ON. In this case, charge the terminal while keeping it turned OFF, and turn it ON after a while.
- For charging time, see "Main specifications".→P200

Internal battery life

- The internal battery is a consumable part. The usage duration of the battery per 1 charge decreases gradually each time the battery is recharged. Talking on the phone for a long time while charging may reduce the internal battery lifetime
- You can check performance (charging ability) of the internal battery from "About phone".→P167
- When the battery usage time per one charge becomes about half of that at the time of purchase, replacing the internal battery is recommended because the internal battery is near the end of life. For replacing internal battery, contact "Repairs (Inquiries/Request)" on the last page (in Japanese only) or DOCOMO-specified repair office.



Available charging adapter

For details, refer to the manual of AC adapter, DC adapter, or LISR cable

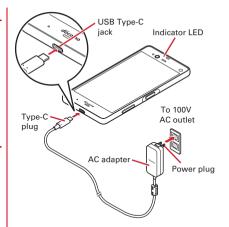
AC Adapter 06 (optional): Supports 100V to 240V AC. The shape of AC adapter plug is for 100V AC (Japanese specification). A conversion plug adapter for the destination country is required when using an AC adapter compatible from 100V to 240V AC. Do not use an electrical transformer for overseas use to charge the terminal.

DC Adapter 05 (optional): Used to charge in a car. For using, USB cable A to C 01 (optional) is required.

♦ Charging with AC adapter

Follow the procedure below to use AC Adapter 06 (optional) for charging.

- Insert the Type-C plug of the AC adapter horizontally into the USB Type-C jack of the terminal
- 2 Insert the AC adapter power plug into an outlet
- The indicator LED on the terminal lights up red while charging, and turns off when charging is complete.
- 3 When charging is complete, remove the AC adapter's power plug from the outlet
- 4 Remove the Type-C plug of the AC adapter horizontally from the USB Type-C jack of the terminal



Charging with a PC

You can charge the terminal via a PC using USB Cable A to C 01 (optional) etc.

• When a screen of new hardware detection or operation selection appears on the PC, select [キャンセル (Cancel)].

Turning power on/off

Turning power on

• Before turning on the power, make sure that there is no gap between the terminal and the slot cap.

Press and hold (2 sec. or more) until the indicator LED lights in green

The terminal vibrates and the lock screen appears following the startup screen.

For the first activation, make initial settings. →P48

Unlock the screen lock

 For unlocking method for screen lock, refer to "Unlocking screen lock".→P54

◆ Turning power off

Press and hold ountil the phone options menu appears

In the options menu, the following items are displayed.
 Power off: Turn the terminal OFF.

Restart: The terminal will restart.

Airplane mode : Turn the Airplane mode ON/OFF.→ P133

Manner mode/Manner mode (Silent)/Manner mode (Alarm): Turn the Manner mode ON/OFF.→P141 Emergency mode: Turn the Emergency mode ON/OFF. →P40

7 [Power off]→[OK]

The terminal turns off vibrating.

Basic operation

Using touch panel

Touch the touch panel directly to operate the terminal.

Notes for using the touch panel

The touch panel is designed for being touched lightly with fingers. Do not push it forcibly with a finger or press it with sharp objects (nail, ballpoint pen, pin, etc.).

- Touching the touch panel may not work in the following cases. Note that it may cause malfunction.
 - Operation with tip of fingernail
 - Operation with a foreign object on the display
- Operation with protective sheet or seal on the display
- Operation with the touch panel wet
- Operation with finger wet by sweat or water
- Operation under water

❖ Tap/Double-tap

Tap: Touch the screen lightly and release the finger quickly.

Double-tap: Tap twice quickly.



Example: Tap

♦ Touch and hold

Touch the screen for a while. Some operations can be operated by keeping touching the screen with a finger.

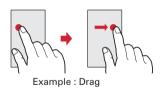
❖ Drag/Slide (Swipe)/Pan

Drag: Touch an item or icon on the screen and move it to the desired position.

Slide (Swipe): Touch the screen with your finger and drag to the desired position.

 For some applications, you can touch the screen with your fingers and move them up and down or rotate them to operate.

Pan: Drag the screen in a direction to view the desired part when whole web page etc. is not displayed in one screen.



A Pinch

Touch the screen with two fingers and widen (pinch-out) or narrow (pinch-in) the fingers distance.



♦ Flick

Touch the screen and sweep the finger quickly.



♦ How to use Exlider

Trace Exlider (0) to scroll the screen or zoom in.

• For setting of Exlider refer to "Exlider settings" →P163

Notes on using Exlider

- · In the following cases, this function does not work.
 - In emergency mode
 - When Slide in launcher is displayed
 - In Split screen
 - When receiving a call
 - When registering a fingerprint, while authenticating with fingerprint
- Depending on application, the scroll mode may not be available while a still image is displayed, etc.
- While the slide display is displayed, the scroll mode may not be available depending on a location where your finger is moved to.

Operating

When this function is ON, the scroll mode is available. Double-tap Exlider [9] to switch to the magnification mode. To switch to the scroll mode, in the magnification, double-tap Exlider [9], switch the screen, or exit the application.

■ Scroll mode

To scroll, slide Exlider (a) up or down and keep touching.

- · Scroll is available until you release your finger.
- You can set the scroll operation to "No change in speed" or "Change speed" in Action setting. When "Change speed" is set, set the scroll speed.→P163

■ Magnification mode

Specify the portion of the screen to zoom in : Double-tap Exlider (◎) (Display magnification frame)→Slide Exlider (◎) up or down (Move the magnification frame to a desired portion)→Tap Exlider (◎) (Zoom in)→Slide Exlider (◎) up or down (Change the magnification of the screen)

✓INFORMATION -----

♦ Switching the portrait/landscape view

With the motion sensor which detects orientation or movement, you can switch the screen display by tilting the terminal vertically or horizontally (Auto-rotate screen > P137).

- Even when you change the orientation of the terminal, the screen may not change depending on the screen displayed.
- Alternatively, you can set with "Auto-rotate" in the Panel switch (→P53).

♦ Screenshot

You can save a screen displayed on the terminal as an image.

• Some screens may not be saved

- Press and hold and the volume down key at the same time (1 sec. or more)
 - Screen shot is saved and _ appears on the status bar.
 - To check the image, flick the status bar down to open the Notification panel (→Fs2) and then tap the notification of screenshot → Select the application, or from the Home screen, tap (Album-Scene).

♦ Emergency mode

In case of emergency such as disaster, reduce the battery consumption by restricting the screen brightness or turning off functions

- Press and hold o until the phone options menu appears
- ¶ [Emergency mode]→[OK]

The terminal restarts and Emergency mode is set.

 To cancel the setting, perform the same operations again or from the Home screen for Emergency mode, tap [Stop saving] > [OK].

✓INFORMATION -----

- Alternatively, from the Home screen, tap
 ☐→[Disaster kit]→
 ☐→[OK] for setting Emergency mode.
- In Emergency mode, the setting is not canceled by turning the power off.

♦ Application permissions

The first time you launch an application or function that accesses other functions and information on the terminal, a confirmation screen that requests authorization for access rights appears. When you approve these access rights, the corresponding functions and information become available to the application or function.

 Confirmation screens vary depending on the application or function. Check the displayed content carefully and operate.

<Example> When launching "Album-Scene" application for the first time

- From the Home screen, [Album-Scene]
 The confirmation screen is displayed.
- 2 [DENY]/[ALLOW]
 Follow the on-screen instructions

✓INFORMATION

- If permission is not granted, some applications and functions may not work, or use of the functions may be limited.
- To change the permissions, from the Home screen, ☐ → [Settings] → [Display/Sound/Apps] → [Apps] → Tap the application → [Permissions] → Turn ON/OFF permissions to change.

Character entry

Enter characters using software keyboard displayed on the

- Entering characters with Super ATOK ULTIAS is mainly described in this section.
- Switching to other input method is available.→P44
- You can connect an external keyboard to enter characters. → P47

Using keyboard

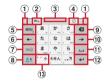
You can enter characters using numeric keypad, QWERTY keypad or handwritten input.

- You can activate voice input from each keypad.→P42
- When the overwrite handwritten input option is enabled, handwritten input is available with the numeric or QWERTY keypad displayed.→P45

■ Numeric keypad

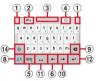
Multiple characters are assigned to a key.

 You can select input method from Flick input, Numeric keypad input, Gesture input, or 2-touch input. →P43



OWFRTY keypad

Enter characters using Romaii input



Handwritten input

Enter characters in handwriting.



- Some key displays may be changed depending on the setting or condition.
- ① Drag left or right to adjust the width of the keypad
- 2 Enable/disable Overwrite handwritten input
- 3 Drag up or down to adjust the height of the keypad
- 4 Display a list of number/symbol/smiley/pict/pict D
- 5 WEN, : Display menu
 - When the menu is displayed, the following operations are available.

テンキー (Numeric keypad): Switch to Numeric keypad QWERTYキー (QWERTY keypad): Switch to QWERTY keypad

手書き (Handwritten input): Switch to handwritten input 全画面手書き (Handwritten in full-screen): Switch to fullscreen handwritten input

上書き手書き (Overwrite handwritten input): Enable/ disable overwrite handwritten input

定型文 (Common phrase): Display common phrases 記号 (Symbol) · 顏文字 (Smiley) · 絵文字 (Pict): Display a list of number/symbol/smiley/pict/pict D

テーマ切替 (Switch theme): Switch the keyboard themes 引用アブリ (Quotation app): Quote 電話帳引用 (Quote phonebook) or Personal note

Tap [設定 (Settings)] to select an application that is activated by flicking key up.

Personal note: Quote Personal note

設定 (Settings): Settings for Super ATOK ULTIAS→P45

- Flick up to activate the specified quotation app. Flick right and enter a postal code→[変換 (Convert)] to enter an address corresponding to the postal code.
- (Touch and hold): Activate voice input
- order
- 6 Move the cursor to left
 - On the numeric keypad, flick up or down to move the cursor up or down, or flick right to move the cursor to the right.
 - On the QWERTY keypad, flick up to move the cursor up, or flick right to move the cursor down.
- ⑦ Display a list of number/symbol/smiley/pict/pict D
- 8 Eswitch input mode to Kana/Alphabet
 - suitch input mode to Kana/Alphabet/Number

- 9 Backspace (Delete a character to the left of the cursor)
 - After a character is fixed, flick a key up to delete the character on the right to the cursor and flick to the left to delete all characters on the left to the cursor.
 - Flick down on the key to restore a character deleted after it was fixed (or flick right in handwritten input mode in nortrait view)
- 10 Move the cursor to right
 - On the numeric keypad, flick up or down to move the cursor up or down, or flick left to move the cursor to the left.
 On the OWERTY keypad, flick up to move the cursor up.
- or flick left to move the cursor down.
 - Flick up to enter a one-byte space in two-byte input mode, or a two-byte space in one-byte input mode.
 - : Convert character
- 12 : Fix or enter linefeed
 - : Fix

 Nove the cursor to the next entry field
 - Q : Search
- (3) ** : Switch to lowercase/uppercase, voiced sound/semi-
- ^{A/a}: Switch uppercase and lowercase of alphabet

 (4) Shift key
 - No shift (♠)/Shift (♠)/Shift locked (♠): Switch to lowercase letter/uppercase at the first letter/uppercase letter
 - . Symbols assigned to the key are also switched.

- (§) Handwritten input area: Write a character with your finger to enter
 - When you write a character, a recognized character appears on the top of input area. You can select a character from the correction candidate list displayed when a recognized character is tapped. You can rewrite on the correction candidate list.

✓INFORMATION

- To hide the keypad, tap . To show the keypad again, tap the
- When you type and fix a word that is not on the list of candidates, , may appear in the area indicated by . Tap
 to save the entered word to the personal dictionary.
- In the entry screen for the password etc., relate the entry screen to an ID (account) or password registered by Personal note to enter quotations

Tap [Register to Personal note] on the upper part of the keyboard and register the authentication information to Personal note to relate to the entry screen. To enter quotations, tap [Quote from Personal note].

- On the browser, Chrome, ID and password will be automatically entered as the quotations according to the related screen information. However, ID and password may not be entered automatically as the quotation according to the screen layout.
- In other applications, the items selected from the list screen will be entered as the quotations according to the related screen information

Numeric keypad input

You can use the following 4 input methods in the numeric keynad

Select the input method you want to use in [Numeric keynad] →P45

Flick input

If you touch and hold the key assigned the character you want to enter, characters (flick guide) will be displayed on that key. Flick towards the desired character without releasing your finger from the screen.

To enter voiced/semi-voiced sound/small/geminate consonant characters, tap ** once or twice after flicking.

■ Numeric keypad input

Tap continuously a key assigned the character you want to enter until the desired character is displayed.

 To enter voiced/semi-voiced sound/small/geminate consonant characters, tap ** once or twice after tapping.

Gesture input

If you touch and hold the key assigned the character you want to enter, characters (gesture guide) will be displayed around that key. Slide your finger to the desired character without releasing your finger from the screen.

 To enter voiced/semi-voiced sound/small/geminate consonant characters, slide down once or twice without releasing your finger from a key. Gesture guide for voiced/ semi-voiced sound/small/geminate consonant characters around the key appears. Slide your finger to the desired character without releasing.



Example: Entering "ば"

 In the alphanumeric input mode, you can switch between uppercase and lowercase characters by sliding downwards without releasing your finger from the screen.

2-touch input

Tap a key assigned a character you want to enter first, then tap a desired character

Switching input method

You can also switch to another input method such as the Google keyboard to enter characters.

- The Google keyboard does not support the Japanese input mode.
- From the Home screen, ∰→[Settings]→
 [Languages & input]

7 [Current Keyboard]→Select an input method

 The keyboards displayed in the list of "Current Keyboard" can be set in [Manage keyboards] in "Setting character entry" (→P44).

✓INFORMATION

- To return to the ATOK Japanese keypad, select [Super ATOK ULTIAS].
- To switch the input mode during entering characters, touch and hold for of the navigation bar (→P49) to select the input mode

◆ Setting character entry

Set by character entries.

- From the Home screen, ∰→[Settings]→
 [Languages & input]
- [Virtual keyboard]
 The virtual keyboard list is displayed.

3 [Google Keyboard]/[Google voice typing]/ [Moji-Henshu]/[Super ATOK ULTIAS]

 Tap [Manage keyboards] to set the keyboard displayed in the list screen of "Current Keyboard" or "Virtual keyboard".

Set required items

Available items vary depending on input method.

❖ Setting Super ATOK ULTIAS

Set entry actions or design for each keyboard. Also, you can register words (Personal dictionary) or edit common phrases, initialize settings, etc.

- From the Home screen, ∰→[Settings]→
 [Languages & input]→[Virtual keyboard]→
 [Super ATOK ULTIAS]
- 9 Set required items

ULTIAS Feature select: Set Keyboard selection, Flick learning mode, ATOK Keyword Express (Enable, Select genres, Notify updates, Receive right away, Auto receive, Interval. Auto receive on Wi-Fi only).

Operation sound/Vibrate: Set Keypad sound and Keypad vibration

Numeric keypad: Set Input mode (Flick input/Numeric keypad input/Gesture input/2-touch input), Flick input (Flick guide, Flick Sensitivity, 「ヤラ」key flick, Modifier key flick, Alphabet key flick), Multi-tap input, Auto cursor moving (Auto cursor moving, Time of auto cursor moving), Gesture input (Gesture guide, Gesture sensitivity, Around touch position, Show faster, Close faster, Time of gesture guide, 「ヤラ」key gesture), Direct numeric input.

QWERTY keypad: Set Direct alphanumeric input, Show numeric keys (Vertical screen/Horizontal screen). Handwritten input: Set Overwrite handwritten input (Numeric keypad, QWERTY keypad), Number of input boxes for normal handwriting or full screen handwriting (Vertical display/Horizontal display), Recognition speed (Auto confirm ON/Recognition speed), Set lines (Thickness and Color for NORMAL HANDWRITING/FULL SCREEN HANDWRITING).

Conversion setting: Set keyboard selection type for Hiragana/Alphabet/Numeric, Available keyboard, Select referred app of MENU flick, Input prediction, Showing prediction candidates before next input, Learning function, Use half-width space, Auto space insert, Character delete key, Function key flick guide, Back key, Auto full screen (horizontal), Hardware keyboard preferentially, Multi-touch.

- Prediction conversion candidates do not appear for character entry on some applications.
- Full screen may not be available depending on the application even if [Auto full screen (horizontal)] is enabled.

Set selection list: Set Font size, Number of lines to display (Vertical screen/Horizontal screen), Expression mode, Punctuation marks, Prediction correction, Proofreading support.

Design: Set Keyboard selection, Theme, Adjust keyboard height (Numeric keypad (Vertical display/Horizontal display), QWERTY (Vertical display/Horizontal display), Handwriting (Vertical display/Horizontal display)),

Floating keyboard (Vertical screen/Horizontal screen).

The floating keyboard is disabled in full screen even if [Horizontal screen] is enabled for [Floating keyboard]. Utility: Set Personal dictionary registration/edit, Phrase registration/edit, ATOK Sync (Enable, Show shared words, Update right away, Auto update, Interval, Update on Wi-Fi only), Export/Import settings (Export Settings, Import Settings), Export/Import all (Export all, Import all). Initialize: Initialize settings or Initializing learning data.

 Learned data, edited personal dictionary/common phrase are not deleted even if [Initializing settings] is executed

Open source software license: Display the open source software license.

Super ATOK ULTIAS: Check the version of Super ATOK ULTIAS.

♦ Editing text

You can copy texts in the character entry field, web page or received mail and cut and paste texts in the character entry field.

· Operation method may vary by application.

♦ Copying text/Cutting

■ Copying/Cutting in the character entry field

Touch and hold a text

Selected text is highlighted.

- Drag knobs on the both ends of text range to adjust selected range.
- To select all, tap : → [SELECT ALL].
- . To deselect, tap out of selected range.

(COPY)/[CUT]

Copying text in a web page etc.

1 Touch and hold a text

Text range is highlighted.

- Drag knobs on the both ends of text range to adjust selected range.
- . To select all, tap [SELECT ALL].
- To deselect, tap out of selected range.
- For some websites, you can perform operations such as tapping [Copy link text] from the menu displayed by touching and holding link.

(COPY)

✓INFORMATION -----

 Touch and hold text and tap [SHARE] to send the selected text using an application.

❖ Pasting text

Tap a position to paste → [PASTE]

The text is pasted to the cursor position

Using external keyboard

You can connect a Bluetooth keyboard (HID/SPP) or USB keyboard to the terminal to enter characters.

- 101 keyboard, 104 keyboard,106 keyboard, OADG 109 keyboard and OADG 109A keyboard are supported.
- For connecting with Bluetooth keyboard, refer to "Connecting with registered Bluetooth devices".→P171
- To use a USB keyboard, connect it to the USB Type-C jack on the terminal.

❖ Setting external keyboard

- A keyboard is displayed when the external keyboard is connected
- From the Home screen, ∰→[Settings]→
 [Languages & input]
- 2 [Physical keyboard]→Select a keyboard→ Select a keyboard layout

Displaying the virtual keyboard

You can set whether to display the software keyboard when an external keyboard is connected.

- From the Home screen, ⊞→[Settings]→
 [Languages & input]
- 2 [Physical keyboard]→Tap [Show virtual keyboard] to set to ON/OFF

Displaying shortcuts of the keyboard

Display the shortcuts to use a connected external keyboard.

- From the Home screen, ∰→[Settings]→
 [Languages & input]
- 2 [Physical keyboard]→[Keyboard shortcuts helper]

Initial settings

When you turn on the terminal for the first time, make initial settings following the on-screen instructions.

- Depending on Google account settings, indicated items may vary
- Tap [日本語(日本) (Japanese)] and in "言語の選択 (Select language)", select [English]→[United States] or other option from the candidates of "すべての地域 (All areas)", and then [LET'S GO]
 - From here on follow the on-screen instructions to set
 - Select set up method
 - Wi-Fi
 - Google account
 - Unlock with fingerprint
 - Google services
 - Google Assistant
 - Exlider (Swipe by finger, new operation experience)
- 2 In the initial settings screen for docomo services, [Agree to all] →[NEXT]
- 2 Set each item

d ACCOUNT: Set d ACCOUNT for using in docomo apps. docomo cloud: Set whether to use docomo cloud. Install all apps: Install applications necessary for using docomo services you subscribed all at once.

4 In Anything else? screen, set each item→[ALL SET]

The Home screen appears

✓INFORMATION

- When How to use the Home screen appears, confirm the content and then tap [Next]→[Next]→[Do not show again]/ [OK]
- When a confirmation screen for sending terminal error information appears, tap [OK].
- If a software update confirmation screen appears, tap [OK].

Indicator LED

Indicator LED notifies the terminal states such as charging and missed call by lighting or flashing.

■ Main notification type, lighting/flashing

Turning on the terminal: Light once in green

Charging: Light in red Charging error: Flash in red

New SMS: Flash in the color specified in "Messaging"→P82

Missed call: Flash in white

✓INFORMATION -----

- · Setting and action of indicator LED may vary by application.
- If the terminal is taken out from the charger when charging with the terminal turned off, turning off the indicator LED may take time.
- Depending on the notification contents, the indicator LED lights only when in the sleep mode.

Screen/Icon

Icons on Navigation bar

Operation icons appear on the navigation bar shown at the bottom of the screen. Names and actions of icons are as follows



-Navigation bar

■ Back icon

Tap : Return to the previous screen, exit out of application

Tap : Return to the Home screen→P58

Touch and hold : Activate Google Assistant

Tap : Display recently used applications → P56

✓ Slide display icon*

Tap: Move the whole screen to the direction of the navigation bar/return to the original view→P50

Delication Zoom at any time icon*

Tap: Zoom the screen/Return to the original screen

 * By using [Navigation bar] (→P164) in Useful tools, set to show/hide the icons

♦ Slide display

When you hold the terminal in one hand, you can move the whole screen to the direction of the navigation bar to operate on the screen where your finger did not reach to.

Tap to display the whole screen with it moved to the direction of the navigation bar (Slide display).

- In horizontal screen, tapping moves the whole screen toward the navigation bar. However, the status bar will not move.
- While the slide display is displayed, tap
 ✓ / ✓ / ✓ to move the screen left/right or up/down.
- Adjust range of sliding by dragging a free area in the slide display in the direction of an arrow.
- The screen returns to the original position by the following operations.
 - While the slide display is displayed, tap [★] / [▲] / [▲]
 - Switching from vertical screen to horizontal screen, or from horizontal screen to vertical screen
 - When a call is received, or an application which can be operated in full-screen is displayed
 - Displaying the screen again after it is switched to sleep mode
 - Displaying the keyboard for character entry
- To set to show/hide slide display icons, while slide display is displayed, tap → or from the Home screen, tap → [Settings] → [Useful tools] → [Navigation bar].
- For some screens such as during screen lock or when the screen saver is activated, sliding is not available.

♦ Icons on the status bar

The status bar along the top of the screen shows notification icons and status icons that allow you to check various conditions

Notification icon Status icon



■ Main notification icon

- M · New Gmail→P86
- : New NX! Mail→P82
- New docomo mail→P80
- : New SMS→P80
- : New Area Mail→P86
- !: Sending SMS is failed→P80
- 🕝 : Wi-Fi is ON and Wi-Fi network is available→P127
- ্হ্ন : Wi-Fi tethering is enabled→P133
- USB tethering is enabled→P133
- Bluetooth tethering is enabled → P134
 2 or more tethering are enabled → P133
 - ∴ Missed call → P72
- Phone memo exists→P73
- : Message in Voice Mail Service→P73

- Update of application from Google Play is available → P91
- \bigcirc : ϕ 3.5 earphone is connected
- Notification of watching or reserving Full Seg/1Seg as background→P97

Notification of recording or programmed to record Full Seg/1Seg as background→P97

: Notification of docomo Data Copy→P123 : Safe data storage→P161, P162

a. Safe data storage 11 101,1 S : Software undate → P196

: Save an image by screenshot → P40

: Location providing is ON→P146

: Omakase Lock is set

: Available memory on the terminal is low

: Dolby Audio is ON→P142

: Authentication failure of d ACCOUNT→P146

: Some notifications are not displayed

■ Main status icon

: Signal strength

Bil: During international roaming

4G-/3G/G: 4G* (LTE)/3G/GSM available

 △ (Uploading) or ▽ (Downloading) appears in white during communication

* "4G+" appears on the screen when the terminal is connected to LTE.

∴ Airplane mode is set→P133

🛜 : Wi-Fi is connected→P127

 △ (Uploading) or ▽ (Downloading) appears in white during communication

Multi-connection is enabled →P129

: Bluetooth function is ON→P171

: Bluetooth device is connected→P171

☐: NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock is set on the terminal and docomo nano LIIM card→P96

. NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock is set on the terminal or docomo nano LIIM card → P96

লৈ: Omakase Lock is set on the terminal and docomo nano UIM card

iii : Omakase Lock is set on the terminal or docomo nano UIM

: Phone memo is set→P73

: Speaker phone is ON→P70

Microphone is muted→P70
 Vibration is ON→P140

(-): [Do not disturb*] is set to [Alarms only] or [Priority only]

(Do not disturb*) is set to [Total silence]

* Can be set from the Panel switch. To use this function, add [Do not disturb] to the Panel switch in advance→P53

: Positioning with GPS→P117

: Manner mode (Manner mode)→P141

র্ত্ত্ব : Manner mode (Silent)→P141 টে: Manner mode (Alarm)→P141

: Remaining battery is 0 - 15%*

: Remaining battery is 16 - 28%*

* Battery indicator of the icon changes according to remaining battery

F: Charging→P35

(white): Keep lit when held is set (screen is lit detecting motion)→P138

(gray): Keep lit when held is set→P138

: Glove touch is ON→P163 : VPN connection→P135

: No docomo nano UIM card

: Kana input mode→P41

: Alphabet input mode→P41

: Number input mode→P41

- : Handwritten input mode → P41
- : Number/symbol/smily/pict, common phrase input→P41

♦ Notification panel

Flick the status bar downward to open the Notification panel. In Notification panel, you can check information of notification icon or make settings.

1 Flick the status bar downward



1 Settings

Display the settings menu.→P126

- ② Open the Panel switch Display the hidden panel switches. → P53
- 3 Panel switch
 - A part of the panel switches is displayed. →P53
 - Tap the panel switch to switch ON/OFF of the function or setting.
 - Flick the Panel switch downward to display the hidden panel switches.

Notification

- Tap the notification to check details or activate the corresponding application.
- Touch and hold the notification, or slide left or right and then tap to make settings of Notifications.

(5) CLEAR ALL

Clear the all notifications and close the Notification panel.

Some notifications may not be cleared depending on notification content. or [CLEAR ALL] may not be displayed.

✓INFORMATION

- Tap [CALL] or [SEND SMS] displayed below the missed call notification to dial or send SMS. However, when there are 2 or more missed calls, they do not appear.

Panel switch

Flick the status bar downward with two fingers to open the Panel switch. Tap the panel switch to switch ON/OFF of the function or setting.

Flick the status bar down with two fingers



- ① User

 Add or switch user/quest →P14F
- Add or switch user/guest.→P145

 ② Edit
 - Touch and hold the panel switch and then drag it to delete or add. To reset the edited content,
 in the edit screen → [Reset].
- 3 Settings

Display the settings menu.→P126

(4) Close the Panel switch

Close the Panel switch and display the Notification panel.→ P52

5 Panel switches

Tap each panel switch to ON/OFF of the function or setting. Touch and hold the panel switch to open the corresponding setting menu.

- ⑥ Notification→P52
- 7 Screen brightness level
- Slide the slider to adjust the brightness.
- 8 Indicator

Indicates the number of Panel switch pages and the which page you are in.

✓INFORMATION

- To close the Panel switch, flick the Panel switch upward or tap
 (Back).
- ON/OFF operation of NFC in the Panel switch is unavailable while charging because the NFC is disabled.

♦ Sleep mode

When the sleep mode is set, the screen backlight turns off so that you can avoid misoperations of the touch panel and lock the screen. You can also reduce battery consumption.

1 0

✓INFORMATION

- When no operation is performed in a certain period of time, the screen automatically turns off according to the settings of [Screen timeout] (→P138) and the terminal turns into sleep mode
- When receiving a call in sleep mode, sleep mode is deactivated.

Unlocking screen lock

- During sleep mode.
- On the screen.

The lock is canceled



©NTT DOCOMO

- · Depending on the setting of [Security unlock preferencel (→P150), authentication is required after swiping on the lock screen.
- Tap on the lock screen to activate the camera.
- Tap 🛮 on the lock screen to activate the しゃべってコン シェル (Shabette concier)

✓INFORMATION

- . By default, numbers of missed calls and unread docomo mails are shown even when lock screen is displayed.
- . By default, the lock screen goes into the sleep mode after approximately 10 seconds.

Slide-in function

By default, you can call out Slide-in launcher and Canture & Draw/Highlight & Copy by sliding your finger from the slide snot (start point for sliding) at the corner of the screen

 For setting of the Slide-in function, refer to "Slide-in" function" →P164

♦ Slide-in launcher

Activate an application from a shortcut saved in Slide-in launcher

- Slide your finger from the slide spot to the center of the screen, then release the finger at a shortcut in Slide in launcher
 - By default, Slide-in launcher is set in the slide snot at the lower left of the screen
 - You can set the Slide-in function by releasing your finger at the position of \$\frac{\psi}{2}\$, which is called up at the same time as the Slide-in launcher
- Perform target operations

♦ Capture & Draw

Capture displayed screen to edit as an image or share with other application.

- Some screens may not be captured.
- Slide your finger from the slide spot to the center of the screen, then release the finger in [Capture & Draw] area
 - By default, Capture & Draw/Highlight & Copy are set in the slide spot at the lower right of the screen.

9 Select operation

Editing image: Tap tools and edit→[Save]

- You can check the image in Album-Scene (→P113) etc.
- With drawing tools, you can write texts or draw pictures on an image by handwriting, crop or zoom in/out.

Sharing with another application : [Share]→Select an application→Follow the on-screen instructions

 You can also activate an application by tapping an app icon displayed next to [Share].

Highlight & Copy

Text strings selected by tracing on the screen with your finger can be copied or shared with another application.

- Slide your finger from the slide spot to the center of the screen, then release the finger in [Highlight & Copy] area
 - By default, Capture & Draw/Highlight & Copy are set in the slide spot at the lower right of the screen.
- Trace text strings you want to copy with your finger

Recognized texts are marked and displayed in preview.

- Tap the preview to display the keyboard to edit the texts
- Some selected texts or background images are not recognized properly.

Perform target operations

Copying texts : [COPY]

 Tap \(/ \cup \) to display/hide preview. Tap [CLEAR] to cancel selecting texts.

Sharing with another application : Select an application to paste

Displayed applications differ depending on the selected texts.

♦ Customizing screen

The keyboard and battery icon design can be changed.

- From the Home screen, ⊞→[Settings]→
 [Display/Sound/Apps]→[Display & Wallpaper]
 →[Customize screen]
- 9 Set required items

Task manager

If you stop operation of an application by tapping (Home) etc., the application may remain active in the background. Also, 2 or more applications may be running depending on the operations. This function allows you to check running applications, switch display, or end applications.

(History)

The recently used applications appear.

- · Tap a thumbnail to display an application.
- Flick a thumbnail left or right or tap [X] to end an application. To end all applications, tap [Delete all].

✓INFORMATION -----

You can set the recently used application to be shown/hide.
 →P157

Split screen

Split the screen in two and operate two different applications at the same time in each screen.

- Activate an application to display beforehand.
- If the application does not support the split screen, it cannot be displayed with this function.

(History)

The recently used applications are displayed.

- 2 Touch and hold the application thumbnail, and then drag to the [Drag here to use split screen] appeared at the top of screen.
 - When "App doesn't support split screen" appears at the top of the screen, the application cannot be displayed in the function.
- In the lower screen, tap a thumbnail of application
 - If the application thumbnail is not displayed, tap (Home) to activate the application to display.

✓INFORMATION -----

- Alternatively, touch and hold (History) when the application is used to open the split screen.
- The split screens can be displayed upper and lower in the vertical screen and left and right in the horizontal screen.
- The application displayed in the lower screen (right in the horizontal screen) can be switched.

To switch the application, tap and select an application thumbnail, or tap (Home) to activate the application to be displayed.

- To end the split screen, drag in the center of the screen to the upper part or lower part of the screen (left end or right end in the landscape view), or touch and hold
- When is displayed, the split screen is still functioning.
 When the Home screen or the application list screen is displayed, tap to return to the split screen.

Switching the home applications

Change the screen (Home screen) displayed by tapping (Home). "docomo LIVE UX", "NX!Home" and "NX!Home Simple" are available in the terminal

- From the Home screen, ∰→[Settings]→
 [Display/Sound/Apps]→[Display & Wallpaper]
 →[Homescreen selector]
- 9 Select a home application to switch to

∠INFORMATION ...

 The wallpaper for the lock screen may be changed by switching the home application depending the home application.

docomo LIVE UX

Home screen

On the Home screen, you can add widgets or activate applications. Flick left or right to switch pages on the Home screen.



1 Widget

Activate widget (Google™ Search).

- Machi-Chara
 Display information such as incoming call and mail reception.
- 3 Applications Activate applications.

Indicator
Indicates the page number of home screens and which screen you are in.

(5) Dock

Displayed even if the home screen page is changed.

PApps button: Display the application list screen. →P60

My Manazine button: Display My Manazine →P65

6 Customize area

You can locate applications, widgets, and folders.

7 Folder

Store multiple applications.

♦ Customizing the Home screen

You can locate desired applications, widgets, etc., or create folders to manage applications on the Home screen.

- Applications are located on either Home screen or the application list screen.
- Touch and hold the application, widget or folder located on the Home screen and drag it to change the position.
- Touch and hold blank area in the customize area
- 7 [Show apps]/[Show widgets]/[Create folder]

3 Select items or make settings as required

- To move an application or add a widget to the Home screen, touch and hold an icon in the application/widget list screen, then drag it to the Home screen area at the bottom of the screen.
- To rename folder, select a folder and tap the folder name.
- Alternatively, touch and hold an application and drag it over another application to create a folder.
- Some widgets can be changed in its size by touching and holding.

✓INFORMATION -----

- In the dock (→P58),you can allocate applications and folders.
 However, acannot be moved/deleted/changed. To show/hide on the Home screen, from the Home screen, tap acannot be moved.
 →[My Magazine use setting].
- Removing applications/widgets from the Home screen
- Touch and hold an application/widget to remove
- 2 Drag to [Back to apps list]/[Remove from Home]
 - Applications are moved to the application list screen(→ P60).
 - Disabling applications or widgets: Touch and hold an application or widget and drag it to [Disable app]→ [DISABLE]→[DISABLE]

✓INFORMATION

 If [Uninstall] appears when you touch and hold an application, drag the application to [Uninstall] and tap [OK] to uninstall

♦ Changing Kisekae/Wallpaper

- Touch and hold blank area in the customize area
- 2 [Change Kisekae]/[Change wallpaper]
- 3 Select items or make settings

✓INFORMATION

- Alternatively, from the Home screen, → Tap [Kisekae] to set Kisekae. Also, from the Home screen, → [Wallpapers]
 Change Kisekae!
- For changing the wallpaper, from the Home screen, ♣ → [Settings] → [Display/Sound/Apps] → [Display & Wallpaper] → Tap [Wallpaper] and select from the displayed items. Alternatively, from the Home screen, ♣ → [Wallpapers] → Tap [Select from photo list]/[Select another wallpaper] to set.
- The battery icon design and navigation bar can also be changed.→P56 , P164

Setting Machi-Chara

You can change the character display, character moving, balloon display and auto-update setting of character etc.

- Touch and hold blank area in the customize
- [Machi-Chara setting]
- Set required items
- **♦** Adding/Deleting home screen

Up to 7 home screens can be set.

- Touch and hold blank area in the customize
- 9 [Home screens]
- ? Perform target operations

Adding:[+]

Sorting: Touch and hold a thumbnail of home screen and drag to the position you want move to

Deleting: [X]

• If applications or widgets are located, a deletion confirmation screen appears.

Displaying: Tap a thumbnail of home screen

✓INFORMATION

Alternatively, from the Home screen, Herman
 Or, pinch-in at any position on the Home screen to display the home screens.

Application list

Display the application list to activate registered applications or move applications or widgets to the Home screen

- Applications not located in the application list screen are displayed on the Home screen.
- You can check the functions and operation steps from Help for some applications.

From the Home screen, 🞛

- For the first activation, the instruction guide appears.
 Tap [Do not show again] or [OK].
- Alternatively, flick downward on the Home screen to display the application list screen.



- 1) Apps/Widgets/Wallpapers switch tab
- 2 Apps/Widgets/Wallpapers (displayed respectively)
 - · Flick left or right to select or set.
 - Depending on the application, number of unread messages appears on the icon.

- To move an application or add a widget to the Home screen touch and hold an application/widget then drag it to the Home screen area
- 3 Display all anns button → P64
- 4 Home screen area
 - Flick left or right to switch pages on the Home
 - Flick up or tap to display the Home screen
- 5 Ontions menu

The options menu such as Kisekae, settings, etc. are displayed

6 Recommends hutton

You can install applications recommended by DOCOMO →P64

(7) Indicator (appears in each tab) Indicates the page number of the list screen and which screen you are in.

✓INFORMATION

LIVE UX operation guide.

Pre-installed applications

◎Fケータイ応援団 (@F mobile phone supporters): Access @Fケータイ応援団 (@F mobile phone supporters) website.

Amazon Kindle: An application for reading books, comics. and magazines sold in the Kindle Store.

Amazon Shopping: An official application that allows comfortable shopping at Amazon with the smartphoneoptimized view.

arrows life: Connect to the arrows life site to show timely news

Chrome: View web pages like on a PC. →P88

DIXIM Player : Watch and listen recorded TV programs photos music videos on the home network with your devices For use Wi-Fi environment is required (in Jananese only)→ P177

Duo : Make video calls.

⑥ dポイント (d POINT) · An application for confirming collecting or using d points.

dmarket: Various services including selling digital contents such as music, videos, books, shopping sites, travel reservation sites, etc. are provided, →P91

| d メニュー (dmenu): An application shortcut for "dmenu". With dmenu, you can easily access the websites recommended by DOCOMO or convenient applications. →P91

Excel: The Microsoft Excel application for Android™. Experience of Exlider: An application for experience of

Exlider Facebook: Facebook allows users to communicate with friends, family, colleagues and classmates, and see what is happening in the world today.

Gmail: You can use email provided by Google or other general providers. →P86

Google: Search for the terminal or web pages. →P122 HF Player: Play music with this application. →P114

iDアプリ (iD application): An application for using electronic money "iD" provided by DOCOMO. You can eniov shopping only by holding Osaifu-Keitai with "iD" set over an IC

card reader in stores. →P96 Instagram: This application allows you to edit the photos and videos shot with the terminal freely, and also can be

shared with family, friends, and people all over the world simply.

- MIAWSON : The official application of LAWSON You can display digital membership using your mobile phone as a member's card search shops and find valuable exchange counons
- Messenger: Send messages or make calls or video calls to the contact of the mobile phone or the friend/group of Facebook
- My docomo アプリ (My docomo app): Check information of your data usage and charge, subscription content, etc.
- My Tracker: You can record and check the daily steps. activity amount, and sleep log etc.
- NX! Mail: Configure and manage multiple accounts of docomo mail Gmail and Internet mail →P82
- OneDrive: The Microsoft OneDrive application for Android. OneNote: The Microsoft OneNote application for Android.
- Play Music : Play music.
- Play Store : Use Google Play. →P91
- Play Movies & TV : Rent movies to watch. You can download movies to watch anytime you want.
- PowerPoint: The Microsoft PowerPoint application for Android
- Twitter: An official client application of Twitter, Public short messages on the website to communicate with others.
- ULTIAS feature select : Set Keyboard selection. Flick learning mode, ATOK Keyword Express (Enable, Select genres, Notify updates, Receive right away. Auto receive. Interval, Auto receive on Wi-Fi only), →P45
- Word: The Microsoft Word application for Android. YouTube : You can play YouTube™ video.
- Album-Scene: View/play still images/videos shot by the

camera or downloaded to the terminal. →P113

Anshin Scan: Ensure your smartphone by checking virus. applications which require your personal data, by alerting when you attempt to access a non-secure website, etc.

→ 遠隔サポート (Enkaku support): An application for using "あんしん凌隔サポート (Δnshin Enkaku Sunnort)" "Δnshin Enkaku Support" is a service that allows staff of the Call center to support the terminal operations by remote-checking the display of your own terminal →P193

- Osaifu-Keitai: Pay money etc. only by holding the terminal over the IC card reader in stores etc. →P93
- Osusume Apps: Displayed when the Home app is set to "NX!Home" or "NX!Home Simple". Install applications recommended by DOCOMO.→P64
- Camera: Shoot still images or videos. →P104 Calendar: View calendar and register schedule.
- Experience of iris authentication : An application to experience iris authentication
- Disaster kit: An application for using Disaster Message Board, Disaster Voice Messaging Service and Early Warning "Area Mail" →P86
- 📆 しゃべってコンシェル (Shabette concier) : Talk to the concierge and it understands what you say and allows you to easily check weather information or train transfer information. make calls, set alarm, etc. You can also enjoy chatting with various characters
- Schedule: An application for creating/managing schedules whose data is shared with Memo application. It supports iconcier.→P119
- Settings: Make the terminal settings. →P126
 - Downloads: An application for managing image data, etc. downloaded from websites.

Data Copy: An application for transferring data when you change the model, or backing up to/restoring from "microSD card" or "データ保管BOX" (Data Storage BOX). →P123

■ データ保管BOX (Data Storage BOX): An application for using data saving box. Data Storage BOX is a service which allows you to upload files to easily manage them in the cloud.

TV: Watch Full Seg or 1Seg. → P97

Calculator: Perform calculations such as addition.

subtraction, multiplication, and division. →P122

Phone: An application for using phone or making phone

settings. →P67
Clock: You can use the alarm, clock, timer, stopwatch and

world clock. →P120

all docomo phonebook: A phonebook application supplied by DOCOMO. The phonebook data of docomo account can be

managed in the cloud.→P77

docomo mail: An application for using DOCOMO mail address (@docomo.ne.ip) to send/receive mails.

Additionally, with d ACCOUNT, you can send, receive and read mail on multiple devices such as a tablet and PC browser using the same mail address. → P80

Drive: Upload photos or videos saved in the terminal to the Google Drive™ so that they can be accessed from two or more devices. Documents can be created to share or to edit.

Instruction Manual: Instruction Manual for the terminal (in Japanese only). You can start function directly from the description.

▶ トルカ (ToruCa): An application for collecting saving coupons/convenient information from your favorite shops. → P97

Personal note: Register and manage authentication information such as your ID (account), password, etc.→P156 Hanashite Hon'yaku: An application that translates the speaker's language into the partner's language. You can enjoy communication with people in different languages

File Manager: An application for managing data in the terminal, microSD card, etc.→P169

Photos: View or edit photos. Photos can be saved to Google cloud

[動] フォトコレクション (Photo collection): A service for backing up photos or videos up to 5 GB to cloud free of charge, then accessing the backup data from smartphones, tablets or PC etc.

My Magazine: Shown when the home application is set to
 "NX!Home" or "NX!Home Simple". A search service for
 displaying articles for categories you selected. → P65

[m] マクドナルド (McDonald's): The official application of McDonald's. You can obtain shop coupons or the latest information.

Maps: View your current location, find other locations and calculate routes. →P119

[マネレコ (MANERECO): A banking app that allows you to check the balance of your bank account, details of your credit card, etc.

Messaging : Send/Receive SMS. →P80

Memo: An application for creating/managing memos whose data is shared with Memo application. It supports i-concier.

Raku-Raku picture transfer for arrows: Transfer shot photos or videos easily by facing the terminal with a smartphone or tablet which "Raku-Raku picture transfer for arrows" application is installed to enjoy them.

✓INFORMATION -----

- The pre-installed applications are displayed in the Home screen or the application list by default.
- Some pre-installed applications require separate subscriptions (charged) to be used.
- For some pre-installed applications, uninstallation may be possible. Some uninstalled applications may be downloaded again on Play Store. → P91
- For some pre-installed applications, installation may be required by accessing Play Store or DOCOMO's site for the first activation

♦ Managing the application list

When the application list is displayed, perform target operations

Disabling applications: Touch and hold an application and drag it to [Disable app]→[DISABLE]→[DISABLE]
Uninstalling applications: Touch and hold an application and drag it to [Uninstall]→[OK]

Sorting applications: Touch and hold an application and drag it to a destination

Installing a recommended application

Tap [Recommends] button to display applications recommended by NTT DOCOMO.

From the Home screen, P→ [Recommends]

- When you activate the application for the first time, the confirmation screen for Osusume apps appears. Confirm the content, tap [ENABLE] and then 💢 on the explanation screen/Tap [おすめアプリ一覧へ(To Osusume apps list)] to display the list of Osusume apps with the notification turned on.
- 2 Select an application → Follow the on-screen instructions to download

✓INFORMATION

 Tap on the recommended application list to switch ON/ OFF the notifications of recommended applications in "Notification settings".

♦ Display all apps

It is a function to search applications.

From the Home screen, ∰→[Display all apps]

A list of all applications is displayed. Tap an application in the page to activate the application. Tap ¼ to jump to the screen where the application is displayed with the icon focused

Backup and restoration of Home screen

You can restore the Home screen layout such as applications and widgets using docomo LIVE UX data backed up in docomo cloud. If you use it, docomo service page will be added to the home screens at the end.

To backup/restore the Home screen layout, you need to set
 d ACCOLINT

♦ Backing up the Home screen layout

- From the Home screen, ⊞→ : → [Layout backup & Restore]
- ¶

 → [BACKUP]
- ♦ Restoring the Home screen layout
- From the Home screen, R→ : → [Layout backup & Restore]
- 2 [Restore the latest backup data]→[Restore]
 Restoring data from the list: [Restore from backup data
 list]→Select data→[Restore]→[RESTORE]

✓INFORMATION

 Some icons or widgets may not be restored, docomo service page may not be added at the last of home screens.

My Magazine

My Magazine is a search service for displaying articles for categories you selected. It helps to set search words based on your tendency of articles to read or profile information to bring them closer to your preference. You can also configure My Magazine so that it can be customized using notifications, location information, docomo service contract information,

♦ Viewing articles

■ From the Home screen,

The list screen divided by genres appears.

- When you set for the first time, the explanation screen for My Magazine appears and you can select categories.
 Confirm the content and tap IOKI.
- Alternatively, flick upward on the Home screen to display My Magazine.
- When the confirmation screen of Twitter link or use of information is displayed, follow the on-screen instructions.
- · Flick left or right to switch genres.
- 7 Tap the article you want to read

♦ Category setting

You can select categories for information you want to view in My Magazine.

- From the Home screen, ☐

 The list screen divided by genres appears.
- 2
 ☐→[Display category setting]→Select categories

✓INFORMATION

 On the list screen, tap to change My Magazine settings or check the Help.

Information of home application

You can check the provider of docomo LIVE UX or version of home application.

- From the Home screen, ₩→ : →[About]
 - If the update of docomo LIVE UX is available, [Update now] is displayed in the application information screen.

 Tan it to update docomo LIVE UX.

Phone

Making a call/video call

- From the Home screen, 📞
- 2 [Dial] → Enter a phone number• To correct phone number, tap <a>s.
 - Notifying caller ID : : →[Caller ID notification]→[Notify]/
 - Your caller ID is important personal information. So, take care when notifying people of it.
 - Selecting prefix:

 →[Select prefix]→Select a prefix

 Select a number registered in "Prefix settings" (prefix)
 - (→P74) beforehand to add before a phone number.
 - Adding 2-sec pause/wait :

 → [Add 2-sec pause]/[Add wait] → Enter an additional number
 - Used to enter main phone number and additional code at once when entering the code additionally during a call for bank balance inquiries, ticket reservation services, etc.
 - 2-sec pause ",": When the phone number is dialed, 2-second pause will be automatically inserted and then additional code will be sent.
 - Wait ";": When the phone number is dialed, the phone will wait automatically and a confirmation message for sending additional code appears. When you tap [Yes], the additional code is sent.

3

Making a video call : • → [Video call]

▲ When a call is ended, [END CALL]

✓INFORMATION

- With VoLTE, you can make high-quality voice and video calls.
 To use VoLTE, both parties must meet the following requirements.
 - Both terminals support VoLTE
 - Both parties are in a VoLTE service area
 - "Network Mode"*1 in Cellular networks is set to [4G/3G/GSM(Auto)] and [Call mode setting*2] is ON.

With VoLTE (HD+), you can make more higher quality voice and video calls than VoLTE.

To use VoLTE (HD+), both terminals support VoLTE (HD+) in addition to the usage conditions of VoLTE.

- *1 You can set from the Home screen, P→ [Settings] → [Wireless & networks] → [More] → [Cellular networks] → [Network Model.
- *2 You can set from the Home screen, ☐ Settings] → [Wireless & networks] → [More] → [Cellular networks] → [Call mode setting].
- On a video call, both speakers can see each other while talking. You can also switch between voice and video calls.
 - When you make a video call, voice call and packet communication charges will apply. When you receive a video call, packet communication charges will apply.
 - Video call imaging is based on best-effort communication (which optimizes transmission speed depending on how busy your network is), so the quality of video images varies depending on your network environment.

- If your terminal failed to switch to a video call during a voice call, a massage appears on the screen indicating that the failure occurred, and the voice call is maintained.
- Since imaging for video call varies by terminal model, your terminal and the other party's terminal may show different image in scope.
- If your face etc. comes close to the proximity sensor during a call, the display goes out. It is redisplayed by moving away from the sensor
- When the earphone is inserted into the terminal or while calling with the speakerphone, the proximity sensor stops and the display remains on even when the face, etc. comes close to the sensor.
- If you put the ear to the earpiece/speaker over the hair, etc. the proximity sensor does not work normally and the call may be interrupted.
- You can set to show/hide caller ID all at once in "Caller ID notification" (→P73)
- For details on sending touch-tone signals during a call, see "Operation during a call".→P70

♦ Emergency call

Emergency call	Phone number
Police call	110
Fire and emergency rescue	119
Coast guard	118

- This terminal supports "Emergency call location notification" If you use the terminal to place a call to emergency numbers such as 110, 119, or 118, the information of a location where you are calling from (location information) is automatically notified to the Emergency call acceptance organization such as the Police Station. The Emergency call acceptance organization may not be able to figure out your exact location depending on the location where you place a call or radio wave condition. When location information is notified, name of Emergency call acceptance organization you are calling to will appear. If you dial by adding "184" in front of your number to hide your caller ID, your location information and phone number are not notified. However, if the agency you called considers your location information and phone number necessary for important purposes such as life saving, the agency can retrieve your accurate location information regardless of vour mobile settings.
 - Note that the areas/time for which the "Emergency call location information" is ready to be used vary depending on the preparatory state of each Emergency call acceptance organization.
- When you call the Police (110), Fire/Ambulance (119), or Maritime rescue (118) from the terminal, clearly indicate that you are calling from a mobile phone, then give your present location and mobile phone number. Also, make a point to call in a stationary position to prevent the call from being dropped. Do not power off the terminal for at least 10 minutes after the emergency call just in case the Police or Fire/Ambulance may have to get in contact with you.
- Note that you may not connect to the local Fire Department or Police Station depending on where you are calling from.

- In Japan, if the docomo nano UIM card is not inserted, emergency calls 110, 119 and 118 cannot be made on the PIN code entry screen, during PIN code lock/PUK lock or while updating software.
- If you dial 110, 119, or 118 overseas, an emergency call screen may appear but the call is normally sent.
- If you make an emergency call with Reject call settings enabled. Reject call settings will be disabled.
- For some network operators, emergency calls via VoLTE may not be available. In that case, set "Call mode setting" (→P67) to OFF.
- Emergency call may not be available via some networks.
- You cannot make emergency call with video call.

♦ International call (WORLD CALL)

WORLD CALL is a service which allows you to make international calls with your DOCOMO terminal in Japan.

- . For details of WORLD CALL, refer to NTT DOCOMO website.
- From the Home screen, ¬☐Dial]→Touch and hold [0]→Enter "Country code-Area code (City code) omitted prefix 0 and phone number→▼
 - In some countries and areas such as Italy, "0" is required.
 - When selecting from the country list to enter "+ country code", enter the area code (city code) and phone number, ^{*}
 →[International call]→Select a country→ [WORLD CALL].

Receiving a call/video call

Receiving a voice call

<Example> When a call is received in sleep mode

A call is received

The incoming call screen (full-screen) appears.

- Press /volume key to stop ringtone or vibration.
- ¶
 →[ACCEPT]

Declining call : ⓐ→[REJECT]

Rejecting a call and sending SMS : ⓐ → [Reject call with SMS] → Select a message

? When a call is ended, [END CALL]

Receiving a video call

<Example> When a call is received in sleep mode

1 A call is received

The incoming call screen (full-screen) appears.

Press /volume key to stop ringtone or vibration.

[ACCEPT VIDEO]

Accepting with voice call : ⓐ→[Accept voice]

Rejecting a call : ⓐ→[REJECT]

Recording phone memo: → [Phone memo]

3 When a call is ended, [END CALL]

✓INFORMATION

- When receiving a call while the Home screen is displayed or application is activated, the incoming call screen is displayed at the top of the screen. After you accept and end call, the previous screen is displayed. Tap a caller's name or phone number on the incoming call screen, the incoming call screen (full-screen).
- When you could not answer a call, notification icon (→P50) appears on the status bar. Open the Notification panel (→P52) to check missed calls, dial or send SMS.
- With "Suguden setting" (→P74) set to ON, you can answer incoming calls just by placing the terminal to your ear. It is not available for video calls

Operation during a call

The following operations are possible in the screen during a

 You can adjust call volume with the volume key while dialing/during a call.



- 1 Name or phone number
- 2 End call
- 3 Show/hide the dialpad for dial input

Send touch-tone signals (DTMF tones).

- 4 Set Mute to ON/OFF
 - Set Mute to ON to make your voice not be heard by the other party.
- 5 Call time
- 6 Set speaker phone to ON/OFF
 - When connecting a Bluetooth device, tap to switch voice output devices.

7 Switch to video

Tap to display a selection screen for switching to video call on the other party's terminal. If it is accepted, switching to video call is available.

To switch to voice call during a video call, tap :
 [Switch to voice call].

Display submenu

During a voice call: You can add a call for another speaker using Voice clear ON/OFF, call on hold*/canceling on hold, and call waiting

During a video call: You can operate switch to voice call, switch of speech output, or switch of image area of yours and third party's.

* To activate the call on hold function, the call waiting service is required.

Image of the other party

- Tap the screen to switch the other party's image between in full-screen and normal screen
- If the camera function of the other party's terminal turns off, the stationary image immediately before turning off is displayed.
- 10 Your image
- (1) Switch camera for sending image

Switch camera (in-camera/out-camera) to shoot image for sending.

✓INFORMATION -----

- Enable Voice clear to improve call sound to be heard clearly by emphasizing the other party's voice or adjusting the listening sound.
- For subscribers of Call waiting, during a voice call, tap (Add call) to make a second call.
- When speaker phone is ON, you can talk handsfree using the speaker
- During a video call, when a calling screen is not displayed because you change to another screen, your image will not be sent to the other party.
- · Voice clear does not support video calls.

7] Phone

Recent calls

You can check call history.

- From the Home screen, 📞
- [Recent calls]



1 All tab

Display all incoming and outgoing calls.

2 Name or phone number

Tap to make a voice call, send SMS, make a video call, add to phonebook, display the profile screen, etc. Touch and hold to edit phone number and call or to delete from the history.

- 3 Incoming tab
 Display received call history only.
- Outgoing tab
 Display dialed call history only.
- Voice call button
 Make a voice call

6 History

Display "Outgoing call"/"Incoming call"/"Missed call".

- In Recent calls, call type such as voice call or video call is not displayed.
- 7 Date and time for incoming/outgoing call

✓INFORMATION

• Up to 500 items can be displayed in Recent calls.

Deleting call history

- On the history screen, tap : →[Delete log]
- Mark items you want to delete→[Delete]→ [Delete]
 - · Tap [Select all] to delete all items.

Phone memo

Set phone memo or play/delete recorded phone memos.

 Note that accepting a video call by phone memo. automatically changes it to a voice call and the image is not recorded

From the Home screen, → : → [Call settings] →[Phone memo]

Set required items

Fnable phone memo: Set ON/OFF of Phone memo

 If number of saved phone memos exceeds the saving. limit the terminal does not answer calls with Phone memo even when the setting is enabled

Phone memos: Display a list of recorded phone memos. Select a phone memo→Tap > to play the message

- To delete a message, touch and hold a phone memo→ [1 memo delete]→[YES]. When a message notifying that there is no phone memo is displayed, tap [OK].
- To delete all the messages, in the phone memo list, tap →[Delete all] → [YES] → [OK].
- Up to 60 seconds per message and up to 10 messages can be recorded for Phone memo

Set answer time: Set a time to answer

✓INFORMATION

. When an incoming call is answered with Phone memo, the guide message tells the caller that you cannot answer the call right now and prompts to leave a message within 60 seconds after been tone.

Call settings

Make various settings for DOCOMO network services, call and Internet call

From the Home screen, ¬: → [Call settings]

Set required items

Network service: The following DOCOMO network

carvicae ara available

Voicemail service *1 · Start/stop the service or set call

Call forwarding service *1 · Start/stop the service change forwarding number, etc.

Call waiting *1 · Start/stop the service or check the settings

Caller ID notification: Set notification or confirm settings. Nuisance call blocking service: Register, remove, check registered numbers or the Advanced settings.

Caller ID display request service : Start/stop service, or check the settings

Call notification: Start/stop the service, or check the settinas.

English guidance: Set or check the settings.

Remote operation settings: Start/stop the service, or check the settings.

Public mode (power OFF) settings: Start/stop the service. or check the settings.

Roaming settings: Setting steps→P184 Phone ringtone: Set phone ringtone.

Vibrate on ring: Set whether to vibrate while ringtone is sounding

You cannot set while Manner mode is enabled

Dialpad touch tones: Set whether to sound when operating the dial pad.

Phone memo: Setting steps→P73

Reject call setting: Make settings for rejecting calls.

Tap the following item to set the call rejection.

Reject unregistered call: Set whether to reject incoming calls unregistered in the phonebook.

Reject anonymous call: Set whether to reject anonymous call

Reject call from pay phone: Set whether to reject call from pay phone.

Reject unknown call : Set whether to reject call unknown call

Specified number rejection: Set to reject calls and SMS messages from the specified phone numbers.

Rejection SMS: Edit rejection SMS messages for incoming call.

Sub address settings: Set whether "*" in phone number is identified as a sub address separator.

Prefix settings: Set a number added before phone number when making a call.

Suguden setting: Setting steps→P74

Contact docomo: Make a call to each inquiry office; "ドコモ故障問合せ (DOCOMO repair office)", "ドコモ総合案内・受付 (DOCOMO General Inquiries)", "海外紛失・盗難等 (For lost, theft, etc. while overseas)", "海外故障 (For malfunction while overseas)".

Calling accounts: Set for Internet calling (SIP) account or using SIP call.

Open source licenses: Confirm open source licenses.

Extension line service setting *2 : Make setting to use the Office Link holding and forwarding line service.

- *1 It is not available for video calls.
- *2 The Office Link is an extension line service for corporate customer.

✓INFORMATION

- Alternatively, you can set call settings from the Home screen,
 □ Settings = [Useful tools] = [Voice call] = [Call settings].
- From the Home screen, ☐ Settings] → [Useful tools] → [Voice call] → [Voice adjust] to adjust listening volume for making it easy to understand.

♦ Suguden setting

Make settings for "Suguden" that allows you to operate the phone only with the motions and voice commands.

- It does not support video calls except for Hide the name when receiving.
- From the Home screen, S→: →[Call settings]
- ¶ [Suguden setting]
- 2 Set each item

Answer: Set whether to answer by placing the terminal to your ear.

Disconnect: Set whether to disconnect calls by motion or voice command.

- Motion: Set whether to disconnect the call by placing the terminal horizontally with the display facing down or by shaking the terminal twice during a call.
- Voice command: Set whether to disconnect the call by saying the disconnect keyword and then putting the terminal off from your ear.

Call*1: Set whether to make a call to the registered number or the number in Recent calls by shaking the terminal once with the Home screen displayed and then placing the terminal to your ear.

Mute, Reject: Set whether to mute the sound or reject a call by placing the terminal horizontally with the screen facing down or by shaking the terminal twice while incoming a call. Select from "Mute", "Reject", or "Reject and send SMS".

Call ranking: Check the parties whom you made a lot of calls

Hide the name when receiving: Set whether to hide the caller's name until when you move the terminal when receiving a call.

Sending of use information: Set whether to send use information

Disable Suguden during roaming*2: Set whether to turn off the Suguden during the international roaming.

- *1 Making a call operation is available while the Home screen or the lock screen (only when Security unlock preference is set to [Touch/Swipe]) is displayed.
- *2 Suguden function is disabled overseas automatically. To use the function overseas, set Disable Suguden during roaming to OFF in the Suguden setting.

✓INFORMATION

- Although the voice command function of Suguden uses the voice recognition technology or the language processing technology, DOCOMO is not liable for any accuracy of those technologies.
- The voice recognition may fail when the distance from the terminal is too far when saying, the volume of voice is too small when saying, saying under a noisy environment, etc.
- Suguden cannot be used in the following cases.
 - When using speakerphone
 - When using earphones, headset, Bluetooth device which call function
 - When making or receiving another call during a call
 - When you are lying
 - While running or going up and down stairs
- When covering up the display with a book-type smartphone case etc.
- If you set [Suguden setting] to ON and put the terminal into a bag or pocket with the screen backlight turned on while receiving a call, the call may be answered or disconnected because the terminal recognizes that motion is executed.
- The proximity sensor does not respond well to black objects. (When answering a call) If you press the earpiece over your hair, the proximity sensor may have trouble working and may cause failure to answer the call. In this case, please press the earpiece directly to your ear.

(When disconnecting/rejecting a call) Turning the terminal over on a black desk, etc. may cause the operation to fail (cannot disconnect/reject). In this case, instead of placing the terminal directly on the surface, raise the terminal 1 cm from the desk, etc. as you flip it over to operate (disconnect/reject).

- The Suguden (answer) function uses the proximity sensor as one of the motion determinations. If you use the function with the proximity sensor (→P30) soiled, you cannot answer properly, and loud sound may emit near your ear, resulting in a hearing loss. Clean the sensor regularly.
- If a motion is performed when [Disconnect] for the Suguden setting is set to ON, disconnection (Motion/Disconnect keyword) is activated in the following cases, and the call is disconnected.
 - When the other party put the call on hold
 - When the other party activates Phone memo (playing back a greeting/recording a message)
- Shaking the terminal strongly is recognized as an operating motion and may cause the call to be muted, rejected, or disconnected
- If the disconnection motion of facing down of the terminal's screen is too fast, the operation may fail (cannot disconnect).
 In this case, perform the motion slowly so that the terminal can respond (disconnect).
- When you call with Disconnect by voice command set to ON, the other application which uses the microphone or uses voice sound during call (e.g.: a call recording application) may not be available. To use the application during a call, set Disconnect (Voice command) to OFF after end of the call.
- While Phone memo is activated (playing back a greeting/ recording a Phone memo message), disconnection with voice command is not available. When you answer the call while recording a Phone memo message, disconnection with voice command is available
- If you use "Hanashite Hon'yaku" during a call, this function is not available.

- When you use the Suguden (answer) function, the terminal detects that the terminal is tilted (lifted) or near your ear and sets the proper sound volume, but if the terminal does not detect it, loud sound may emit near your ear. Set the ring volume to a properly. Too loud volume may cause a hearing loss. You can set the ring volume from the Home screen, ☐ [Settings] → [Display/Sound/Apps] → [Sound] → [Ring volume]
- For detail information about Suguden function, notes on using, etc., refer to the following website. https://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/service/suguden/ (in Japanese only)

Phonebook

You can register phone numbers, email addresses, etc. to the phonebook. You can contact registered parties through simple operation.

- To use cloud on the phonebook, docomo phonebook application is needed. For the first time activation of docomo phonebook application (including after the application is initialized), "Use of Cloud" screen appears and you can start use of cloud.
- When using the function which allows users and guest to use the terminal, all functions related to cloud service of docomo phonebook cannot be used other than the owner.
- From the Home screen, [ドコモクラウド (docomo cloud)]→[docomo phonebook]
- [Contacts]

Phonebook list appears.



① Name

Tap to display the profile screen. In the profile screen,

- 2 Search
 - Search contacts.
- 3 Register→P77
 - Register a new phonebook entry.
- 4 Logging in to/out from cloud
- 5 Display submenu

You can delete contacts, operate the cloud menu, SD card/SIM card/sharing, settings, or view help, number of registrations, application information.

6 Index

Display the index. Search entries in the order of Japanese syllabary, alphabet, etc.

♦ Adding an entry to the phonebook

- In the phonebook list, [Register]→Set each item→[Save]
 - Contacts data registered in docomo account can be synchronized with Cloud.
 - When Google account is registered, tap [Set] in the account field to select the Google account.

✓INFORMATION -----

- · You can also add phonebook entry from the call history.
- **♦** Editing a phonebook entry
- In the phonebook list, select a contact→[Edit]
 →Edit each item→[Save]

Deleting a phonebook entry

- In the phonebook list, select a contact to delete

 →: →[Delete]→[OK]

Using Group

- In the phonebook list, [Group]
- ¶ [Add group] → Set each item → [OK]
 - Sorting groups: [Sort] → In the group list, tap a group and slide upward or downward → [OK]
 - Editing a group: In Group list, tap a group → [Edit] → Set each item → [OK]
 - Alternatively, touch and hold a group in Group list→ [Edit group].
 - Deleting a group: In the group list, touch and hold a group → [Delete group] → [OK]
 - In Group list, tap : →[Delete group] to select a group to delete

✓INFORMATION -----

· Only groups of docomo account can be sorted.

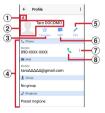
❖ Registering a contact to a group

- In the phonebook list, [Group]
- 2 Select a group→[Add member]→Mark contacts to add→[OK]→[OK]
 - Canceling group : Select a group → [Delete member] → Mark a contact to delete → [OK] → [OK]

♦ Displaying profile screen

Select a name in the phonebook list

Profile screen appears.



- 1 Account icon
- 2 Image and name set in the phonebook entry
- 3 Favorites

Added to "Favorites".

4 Registration information

Tap an item to send a call or email etc. Touch and hold to display the options.

(5) Edit

- 6 cMc
 - Display the SMS creation screen and send a message.
- 7 Make a video call/Check location
 - Make a video call or connect the website of imadoco search/imadoco kantan search.
- Voice call button
 Make a voice call

✓INFORMATION -----

- Tap : on the profile screen to operate sharing, etc.
- To display phonebook entries added to "Favorites", in the phonebook list, tap [Group]→[Favorites].

Importing/Exporting phonebook entries

On the phonebook list, ; →[SD card/SIM card/common]→Select an item

Restore from SIM card: Type of phone numbers and mail addresses are imported as "Others".

Activate docomo Data Copy app: Activate docomo Data Copy application and back up or restore the phonebook entries or other data to or from a microSD card collectively. → P123

Send all data (common): Create an export data of all entries of the phonebook (.vcf). Open the Notification panel and then tap the notification of "Finished exporting contacts. Tap to share contacts". Select the application such as Bluetooth or the mail application to perform sending operation.

* It is not supported for some applications.

✓INFORMATION -----

 If you try to send all phonebook entries via Bluetooth communication to an i-mode terminal, data cannot be moved normally.

◆ My profile

You can check your own phone number. You can also register or edit your own information.

- From the Home screen, [ドコモクラウド (docomo cloud)]→[docomo phonebook]
- 2 [My profile]
- **?** [Edit]→Set required items→[Save]
 - To perform Send My profile, tap : →[Send My profile] and follow the on-screen instructions.

Mail/Browser

docomo mail

Send/receive mails using DOCOMO mail address (@docomo ne in)

Sent/received mails are saved in docomo mail server. You can transfer mail data easily when the terminal is lost or you change the model. Additionally, with d ACCOUNT, you can send, receive and read mail on multiple devices such as a tablet and PC browser using the same mail address. For details of docomo mail, refer to NTT DOCOMO website. https://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/service/docomo_mail/ (In Japanese only)

From the Home screen,

From here on, follow the on-screen instructions.

Messaging (SMS)

You can send and receive text messages with a mobile phone number as the destination

* For details on a number of characters that you can send/receive etc, refer to "Short Message Service (SMS)" on the NTT DOCOMO website

♦ Creating and sending SMS

From the Home screen, R→[Messaging]

2 [NEW MESSAGE]→Enter a mobile phone number→[確定 (Done)]

- When a phone number or reading is entered, the contacts matching the phonebook data appear and then you can select from them.
- [Send message]→Enter a message→[Send]

✓INFORMATION

- SMS can be also sent to or received from the parties using overseas network operators. For countries and overseas network operators available, refer to NTT DOCOMO website.
- To send to users of overseas network operators, enter "+",
 "Country code" and then "the recipient mobile phone
 number". Alternatively, enter "010", "Country code" and "the
 recipient mobile phone number" to send messages. Enter a
 phone number without a leading "0", if any.

When SMS is received

When an SMS message is received, the notification icon appears on the status bar (→P50). To check the new SMS, open the Notification panel (→P52) and then tap the notification.

✓INFORMATION -----

- If the terminal is initialized and an SMS is received right after rebooting, ringtone and vibrator may not work regardless of notification settings for SMS.
- When the memory of the terminal is low, SMS cannot be received. Uninstall unnecessary applications etc. to increase the available memory. →P92 . P143

◆ Displaying sent/received SMS

- From the Home screen, ⊞→[Messaging]
- 9 Select a message thread
 - Tap [CALL] to make a call.
- Replying to SMS
- From the Home screen, ⊞→[Messaging]
- 2 Select a message thread → [Send message] → Enter a message → [Send]

♦ Forwarding SMS

- From the Home screen, R→[Messaging]
- 2 Select a message thread → Touch and hold SMS → [Forward]
- **3** Enter a mobile phone number→[確定 (Done)]→ [Send]
 - When a phone number or reading is entered, the contacts matching the phonebook data appear and then you can select from them.

♦ Deleting SMS

- From the Home screen, P → [Messaging]
- 2 Select a message thread→Touch and hold SMS
 →[Delete]→[DELETE]

✓INFORMATION -----

- To delete a message thread, touch and hold a message thread → Tap [DELETE] → [DELETE].
- To delete all message threads, in the message thread screen, tap [MENU]→[Delete all threads]→[DELETE].

Setting SMS

From the Home screen, P→ [Messaging] → [MENU] → [Settings]

9 Set required items

SMS Enabled: Change default SMS application.

Delete old messages: Set whether to delete old messages

if the number of saved messages reaches upper limit. **Text message limit**: Set the number of messages to save per thread

Backup: Copy messages between the terminal and a microSD card

Delivery reports : Set whether to require

acknowledgement of receipt for a message to send each time.

Manage SIM card messages: Manage messages saved on the docomo nano UIM card.

Notifications: Set whether to show notification on the status bar when receiving a message.

Sound: Set ringtone when receiving a message. **Vibrate**: Set whether to vibrate the terminal when receiving a message.

LED: Set color of indicator LED when receiving a message.

Set the smsc number : Set the message center number.

Making the setting is not necessary normally.

✓INFORMATION

 On the SMS setting screen, tap [MENU]→[Restore default settings] for restoring the default settings.

NXI Mail

Set docomo mail address (@docomo.ne.jp) or an email account provided by general provider to use Email.
To use NX! Mail, download the application from Google Play.

• You can use SMS

♦ Setting Email account

- Obtain the information required for setting up the mail account from your service provider in advance.
- From the Home screen, ₩→[NX! Mail]
- 2 [DOCOMO MAIL] / [GOOGLE ACCOUNT] / [ANOTHER ACCOUNT] / [EXCHANGE ACCOUNT]

From here on, follow the on-screen instructions and enter mail addresses and passwords etc. to configure the mail account

✓INFORMATION

- If you have already set a mail account and want to add on another mail account, on the folder list, tap [MENU] → [Settings] → [Account settings] → [Add new account] to operate
- If you have already set an Exchange account and want to add on another Exchange account, on the folder list, tap [MENU] → [Exchange Settings]→[Add account] to operate.

♦ Creating and sending an email

From the Home screen, ₩→[NX! Mail]

- · The folder list screen appears.
- If a folder is set for the startup screen (→P84), the mail list screen of the set folder appears.

(CREATE)

- When the Exchange account and other account are set, tap [Create EXCHANGE mail] / [Create other mail]
- When several mail accounts are set, tap "From" field→
 Tap the mail account you want to use to switch.

Enter the mail address in the address field

- To add a destination, enter the mail address in the field displayed below the address field you previously entered in.
- Enter a subject in the field.
- Enter a message in the message field
- 6 [SEND]

✓INFORMATION -----

- Email is handled as email from a PC. If the receiver sets rejection of emails from PCs, the email cannot be sent.
- With some service providers, settings for "OP25B (Outbound Port 25 Blocking): Spam mail transmission blocking" are needed. For details, contact the service provider you are subscribed to.

Receiving/Displaying emails

- From the Home screen, PP→[NX! Mail]
- ¶ [MENU] → [Update]
- 3 Select a folder from the folder list→Select an

Replying to an email

- 1 Display an email
- (REPLY)

Replying all : [REPLY ALL]

- 3 Enter a message → [SEND]
- ♦ Forwarding an email
- 1 Display an email
- ¶ [MENU]→[Forward]
- 3 Enter a mail address/message → [SEND]
- **♦ Deleting emails**
 - From the Home screen, ∰→[NX! Mail]
- 2 Select a folder from the folder list→Touch and hold an Email you want to delete on the list→ [Delete]→[OK]

♦ Operations on the folder list screen

Display the folder list screen

Displaying the mail list screen in a folder: Tap the folder to display the mail list screen of

Creating a new folder: [Create folder]→[Create folder from phonebook group]/[Create folder by yourself]→
Set items→[FINISHED]

Sorting folders: Touch and hold the folder to sort → Drag the folder to the desired position

Setting a folder as the start screen: Touch and hold the folder to set as the start screen→[Set as start screen]

- When you launch NX! Mail, the mail list in the specified folder is displayed.
- To cancel the startup screen, touch and hold the folder set as startup→Tap [Cancel start screen].

Editing a created folder: Touch and hold the folder to edit

→[Edit]→Set items for the folder→[FINISHED]

Deleting a created folder: Touch and hold the folder to delete → [Delete] → [OK]

Displaying the menu: [MENU]

You can perform operations such as the mail update, account edit, email backup/restore, and mail setting.

Setting Email

Make Fmail settings

❖ General settings for NX! Mail

On the folder list screen, [MENU]→[Settings]

9 Set required items

Incoming settings: Set the operation when receiving an mail.

Account settings: Add the account and settings. →P85
Change layout: Set the layout of the folder list screen.
Mark: Set the mark available for received mails.

. Up to 3 marks can be set.

Display folder: Set whether to display the folders of protect/unclassified/SMS.

Signature: Set the signature.

SMS: Set the SMS application used as default and set the operation when receiving SMS.

Other: Perform other settings related to NX! Mail such as quoting for reply, displaying the reply source mail/SMS on the reply screen, displaying the mail sending screen, changing the backup destination for emails.

✓INFORMATION

 Tap [Information] to check the NX! Mail version, saved numbers of mails, and used license.

❖ Setting NX! Mail account

· Available items vary depending on account type.

<Example> Setting IMAP account

On the folder list screen, [MENU]→[Settings]→ [Account settings]

The account list screen is displayed.

Select an IMAP account → Set each item

Account name display: Edit an account name.

Change icon: Change the icons displayed next to the account names.

Name displayed in outgoing email: Edit the displayed name to be displayed to the receiver of emails.

Default send address: Use the marked account as default when making a new email.

Receive interval: Set the receiving interval of emails.
Edit email address: This cannot be changed normally.
Incoming server settings: Set the received mail server.
Outgoing server settings: Set the sending mail server.
Show "All received" folders: Set whether to display mails in the selected folder in "All received".

Reply address: If you want to receive a reply with a mail address different from the one you sent, enter the address for reply.

Ringtone: Set the ringtone for incoming mail.

Vibration: Set whether to vibrate the terminal when an email is received.

LED: Set the color of the Indicator LED for incoming mail. **Character code when sending mail**: Set the character codes for emails.

✓INFORMATION -----

- Setting of [Push] to [Receive interval] accelerates the battery consumption.
- To delete an email account, touch and hold the account to delete on the account list screen → Tan [Delete] → [OK]

♦ Backing up/Restoring emails

■ Backing up

- On the folder list screen, [MENU]→[Backup/ Restore emails]
 - If the confirmation screen notifying that Exchange is not supported, tap [OK].
- ¶ [Backup emails] → [vmg] / [eml]
- 3 Place a check mark on the items to back up→
 [OK]→[OK]
- Restoring
- On the folder list screen, [MENU]→[Backup/ Restore emails]
 - If the confirmation screen notifying that Exchange is not supported, tap [OK].
- [Restore emails]→Select an account
- 3 Select the restore destination→Place a check mark on the data to restore→[OK]→[OK]

✓INFORMATION -----

The backup destination can be changed.→P84

Gmail

You can use email provided by Google or other general providers.

 If Google account or email account is not set, follow the onscreen instructions.

Displaying Gmail

From the Home screen, [Google]→[Gmail]

A list of message threads is displayed in the inbox.

 For details on Gmail, tap or flick right the left end of the screen → Tap [Help & feedback] to see Help.

Early warning "Area Mail"

Area Mail is a service which allows you to receive earthquake early warning or tsunami warning, emergency warning related to weather etc. delivered by the Meteorological Agency, and disaster/evacuation information delivered by the national government or local governments without being influenced by congestion.

- Area Mail is a free service and subscription is not required.
- Up to 50 messages can be saved. If savable number of Area Mail exceeds the limit of maximum, the oldest one is deleted in order.
- Area Mail cannot be received in the following case.
 - When the power is off
 - During international roaming
 - In Airplane mode
 - While updating software
 - When PIN code entry screen is displayed
 - When using a SIM card provided by the other company
 - While making a voice call (except voice calls using VoLTE)
- Area Mail may not be received when available memory of the terminal is low or tethering is set, or during packet communication
- You cannot receive the unreceived Area Mail (Earthquake Early Warning). Area Mail (Tsunami warning, emergency warning related to weather etc., Disaster/Evacuation information) can be resent, so you can receive the unreceived ones.

♦ When receiving Early warning "Area Mail"

When Area Mail is received, the notification screen appears and you are notified by the dedicated buzzer sound or dedicated ringtone and vibration.

- The buzzer sound and the ringtone cannot be changed.
- 1 Receive Area Mail automatically
- When receiving, the buzzer o ringtone beeps, and the icon appears on the status bar
- 2 Area Mail message is displayed
- Checking received Area Mail later
- From the Home screen, ₩→[Disaster kit]
- [Early Warning "Area Mail"]
- 2 Select an Area Mail from the Area Mail list
- **❖** Deleting Area Mail
- From the Home screen, P→ [Disaster kit]
- [Early Warning "Area Mail"]
- Select Area Mail to be deleted→[Delete]→[OK]

Setting Early warning "Area Mail"

Set whether to receive Area Mail, or set operations when receiving Area Mail

- From the Home screen, ₩→[Disaster kit]
- 7 [Early Warning "Area Mail"]
- 3 **□→[Settings]**
- A Set required items

Receive setting: Set whether to receive Area Mail.
Beep tone: Set the sounding time or the sound volume for
the buzzer/ringtone, or set whether to sound the buzzer/
ringtone even in silent mode.

Check screen image and beep tone: Check the reception screen and the buzzer/ringtone sound for earthquake early warning, tsunami warning and disaster/evacuation information (including the emergency warning related to weather etc.).

やさしい日本語表示 (Simple Japanese display): Set whether to display Earthquake Early Warning and Tsunami Warning in simple Japanese.

翻訳・アブリ連携設定 (Translation/App link setting): Set to translate the received content, or set whether to use the function for linking with the other application. This item does not appear when the language is set to English.

Chrome

You can view web pages like on a PC using Chrome.
On the terminal, "Chrome" can be used over a packet communication or Wi-Fi connection.

Operation while viewing website

■ Switching web page in portrait/landscape view

Tilt the terminal vertically or horizontally to switch the portrait/landscape view.

■ Scroll/Pan

Scroll the screen up/down or left/right or pan (→P38) in all directions to display the desired part of the screen.

■ Zooming in/out on web page

Pinch-out/Pinch-in: Zoom in/out

- Activating Chrome to display a website
- From the Home screen, 👩

The preset home page is displayed.

 Slide the screen downward to display the address bar at the top part of web page. Enter URL or a keyword in the address bar

Opening a new tab

You can open multiple tabs to switch web pages quickly.

- When a web page is displayed, slide the screen down to display the top of the screen→11*
 - * The number varies according to opened tabs.
- **7** 🕀

A new tab opens and a web page is displayed. Switching: Tap a tab you want to display Closing: [X] of tab you want to close

♦ Displaying website in incognito tab

You can browse web pages without leaving browsing/ searching history.

- When a web page is displayed, slide the screen down to display the top of the screen→
- [New incognito tab]

A web page is displayed in incognito tab.

- Enter URL or a keyword in the address bar.
- appears at the top of the screen while a window opens in incognito tab.
- To close incognito tab, when a web page is displayed, slide the screen down to display the top of the screen →
 Tap [X] of incognito tab.
 - * The number varies according to opened tabs.

✓INFORMATION -----

 Web pages opened in incognito tab are not left in the history.
 If you close the incognito tab, any record such as Cookie is also cleared. However, downloaded files or web page added to bookmarks is saved.

Displaying web page from history

- When a web page is displayed, slide the screen down to display the top of the screen → : → [History]
- Select a history of the web page
- **♦ Adding bookmark to view website**

❖ Registering a bookmark

When a web page is displayed, slide the screen down to display the top of the screen→ * → ↔

❖ Displaying web pages from bookmarks

- 2 Select a bookmark

 Tap: at the right of Bookmarks to edit or delete.

♦ Web page link operations

Tap a link displayed on web page to operate the following.

Touch and hold a link to display menu options; save the link or copy the URI

URL : Open the web page.

Fmail address : Create a new mail

Phone number: Call to the phone number.

File: View/save the file.

✓INFORMATION

. The saved files can be checked with File Manager etc.

♦ Downloading images of websites

- While a website is displayed, select an image (Touch and hold)→[Download image]
 - The downloaded images can be checked in "Album-Scene" application (→P113) etc.

♦ Highlight & Copy texts on website

- When a web page is displayed, slide your finger from the slide spot at the bottom right of the screen to the center, and release your finger in [Highlight & Copy] area
- Trace texts with your finger
 - From here on, refer to "Highlight & Copy".→P55

♦ Printing web page

You can print a displayed web page using a Wi-Fi supported printer or the cloud print function. Set connection with a printer beforehand.→P175

- While a web page is displayed, slide down the screen to display the top part of the web page

 → : → [Share...] → [Print]
 - From here on, refer to "Print", →P176

♦ Setting Chrome

You can set search engine and privacy setting etc.

When a web page is displayed, slide the screen down to display the top of the screen → : → [Settings]

9 Set required items

Sign in to Chrome : Sign in to Chrome with your Google account

Search engine: Set the search engine to be used for search web pages.

Autofill and payments: Use Autofill or set address or credit card information used for Autofill

Save passwords: Set whether to save passwords entered to web pages

Home page : Set a home page.

Privacy: Make settings for safety or convenience.

Accessibility: Make settings of the screen display such as font size or zooming

Site settings: Make sites settings such as Cookie or

Data Saver : Set whether to save the data usage.

About Chrome: Check information about Chrome such as version of the application.

Applications

dメニュー (dmenu)

In dmenu, you can easily access sites recommended by DOCOMO or convenient applications.

From the Home screen, [dメニュー (dmenu)]
"Chrome" activates and "dmenu" appears.

✓INFORMATION -----

- To use dmenu, Internet connection by packet communication (LTE/3G/GPRS) or Wi-Fi is required.
- For connecting dmenu and downloading applications introduced in dmenu, packet communication charge is applied separately. Some downloaded applications automatically perform packet communications.
- Applications introduced by dmenu may include charged ones

dmarket

Various services including selling digital contents such as music, videos, books, shopping sites, travel reservation sites, etc. are provided.

1 From the Home screen, [dmarket]

Top screen of dmarket appears.

 For details on dmarket, refer to the following website. https://d.dmkt-sp.jp/common/about/index.html (In Japanese only)

Play Store

With Play Store, you can access to Google Play to search convenient applications or fun games which you can download and install on the terminal. Also, movie contents can be rented to view.

- To use Google Play, you need to set up a Google account on the terminal. If a Google account is not yet set up, follow the on-screen instructions that are displayed when you open Play Store for the first time.
- For details on Google Play, on the Google Play screen, flick right the left edge of the screen→[Help & feedback] to see Help
- Items or displays may vary depending on the version of the application.

Installing application

- From the Home screen, [Play Store]
- 2 Search an application→Select an application

[INSTALL] (for free application)/[Price] (for paid application)

- Displayed items differ depending on the application.
- If the application needs to access the data or functions of the terminal, functions to be used by that application are indicated on the screen. Be careful about installing applications that access lots of functions or a significant amount of data. Once you tap [ACCEPT] in this screen, you are responsible for the consequences of using this application on the terminal.
- For details about buying charged applications, returning the product, demand for refund, flick the left side of the Google Play screen to the right—[Help & feedback] to see help.
- To uninstall charged applications, the refund screen may be displayed. For details, on the Google Play screen, flick right the left edge of the screen → [Help & feedback] to see Help.

Check the download progress

When installation is completed, 2 appears on the status bar.

✓INFORMATION

- Once you accept the installation of an application, you will be held responsible for its use. Be careful especially about applications which access many functions or large amount of data
- Make sure the security of application, then install it at your own risk. The terminal may be infected with a virus and the data may be damaged.
- NTT DOCOMO is not liable for any malfunctions or disadvantage brought to you or any third party due to installed applications etc. provided by the third party including Goodle LLC.
- For applications which you installed from Play Store and are provided by the third party including Google LLC., contact each provider.
- Some applications automatically connect to the Internet and perform communications. Note that packet communications charge may be higher.
- The icon for the installed application is displayed on the Home screen or the application list screen.
- Installed accessibility plug-ins can be enabled from the accessibility. →P166

♦ Deleting Google Play application

- On the Google Play screen, flick the left end of the screen to the right→[My apps & games]→ [INSTALLED]
- 9 Select an application

2 [UNINSTALL]→[OK]

 When [REFUND] is not displayed for charged applications, this means that the free trial period has ended.

Osaifu-Keitai

You can use Osaifu-Keitai service which allows you to pay money or to use as a point card only by holding the terminal over the IC card reader in stores etc. and "かざしてリンク対応 サービス (Kazashite-Link compatible service)" which allows you to access information by holding the terminal over a home appliance, a poster, etc

You can save electronic money and points to an IC card of the terminal and a docomo nano UIM card. Also, you can check balance of electric money and point value on the screen. By locking Osaifu-Keitai functions, you can prevent the terminal from being used without your permission in case of theft or loss.

For details on Osaifu-Keitai, refer to NTT DOCOMO website.

 A setting from the dedicated website or application is required to use Osaifu-Keitai compatible services.

Precautions on using Osaifu-Keitai compatible terminal

- Data in the IC card*¹ and in the docomo nano UIM card*² may be lost or modified because of the malfunction of the terminal (when we repair your terminal etc., as we cannot repair it with Osaifu-Keitai data remained, you are required to erase the data yourself). For more information about reissuing and restoring data, and support for saving and transferring data, contact the Osaifu-Keitai compatible service provider. For important data, be sure to use an Osaifu-Keitai compatible service with backup service.
 - *1 Data saved in IC card installed to Osaifu-Keitai compatible
 - *2 Data stored on a docomo nano LIIM card
- If you use a docomo nano UIM card of the previous model, to use Osaifu-Keitai compatible services, install and set the application of Osaifu-Keitai compatible service providers.
- If the data in the IC card and docomo nano UIM card is lost, modified or damaged by any means related to Osaifu-Keitai compatible service such as malfunction or model change, DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for the loss of data.
- If the terminal is stolen or lost, immediately contact NTT DOCOMO and the Osaifu-Keitai compatible service provider you using for advices.

Using "Osaifu-Keitai service"

From the Home screen, ₩→[Osaifu-Keitai]

 If the initial setting has not yet made, the initial setting screen appears. Follow the on-screen instructions to set.

9 Select a service

Set up the service

- Make the required settings from the service site or application.
- ▲ Hold

 mark over a card reader

 mark ov

✓INFORMATION -----

- When reading/writing data, you need not activate Osaifu-Keitai application
- Powering on the terminal is not necessary, but if the terminal remains powered off for a long time or battery is low, the function may not be available.
- Note that Osaifu-Keitai compatible applications perform background communication necessary for providing the Osaifu-Keitai service regardless of the setting of Battery saver or Data saver of the terminal and that may incur packet communication charge.—P144, P132
- According to the installed Osaifu-Keitai application or its setting status, during screen lock or when the screen is off, the service may not be available by holding the terminal over the IC card reader.
- For non-subscriber to sp-mode, a part of Osaifu-Keitai service may not be available.
- When the terminal is turned on or restarted, or after the software is updated, unlock the screen lock and then hold the terminal over an IC reader to use the Osaifu-Keitai service.

◆ Using "かざしてリンク対応サービス (Kazashite-Link compatible service)"

- From the Home screen, ∰→[Settings]→
 [Wireless & networks]→[NFC/Osaifu-Keitai
 Settings]
 - When the password setting screen for NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock appears, follow the on-screen instructions to set password.
 - If [Lock NFC/Osaifu-Keitai] is marked, unmark the checkbox
 - Alternatively, from the Home screen, ☐ (Osaifu-Keitai) → (1) / (2) to display the "NFC/Osaifu-Keitai Settings" screen.
- Mark [Reader/Writer, P2P]
- 3 Hold mark over a device equipped an NFC module, a smart poster, etc.
 - In addition, you can exchange information between terminals using Android Beam.→P173

❖ NFC/Osaifu-Keitai Settings

Select NFC Type you use.

- From the Home screen, ⊞→[Osaifu-Keitai]
- 7 ☐→[NFC Type setting]
- 3 [FeliCa / Type A / Type B (Default value) / [FeliCa / Type A] / [FeliCa /Type B]

♦ Tap & pay

Enable or disable the setting of the service available by holding the terminal over the IC card reader, such as Osaifu-Keitai service

- For details on Tap & pay, on the Tap & pay screen, [MENU]
 → [Help].
- From the Home screen, ∰→[Settings]→
 [Wireless & networks]
- 2 [NFC/Osaifu-Keitai Settings]→[Tap & pay]
 Tap & pay screen appears.

✓INFORMATION -----

 When Emergency mode is set/released, the setting of enabling/disabling of Osaifu-Keitai compatible services may be changed.

When Emergency mode is set/released, to use Osaifu-Keitai compatible services, check the settings of Tap & pay and hold the terminal over the IC card reader. → P40

Notes when holding over the other device

Pay attention to the following when holding the terminal over a card reader. NFC module equipped device, etc.



- Bring mark close to the device slowly, do not hit it strongly.
- Hold mark over the center of the compatible device in parallel. If scanning fails even with it held over the center of the scanner, slightly lift up the terminal, or move it backwards/forwards or to the left/right.
- If there are metal objects between nmark and the other device, scanning may fail. Putting the terminal into a case or cover may affect communication. In that case, remove the case or cover.

♦ Locking Osaifu-Keitai function

Lock the Osaifu-Keitai function not to allow others to use Osaifu-Keitai services or acquire data from scanners.

 Osaifu-Keitai lock is different from screen lock authentication or SIM card lock.

From the Home screen, R→[Osaifu-Keitai]

2

 When the password setting screen for NFC/Osaifu-Keitai lock appears, follow the on-screen instructions to set password.

[Lock NFC/Osaifu-Keitai]→Authenticate Using fingerprint authentication/iris authentication: [Use

biometrics]→Authenticate
• To use fingerprint/iris authentication, register fingerprint/iris and set Security unlock preference to IFingerprint authentication/I/Iris authentication in

✓INFORMATION -----

advance. →P152 . P155

- While NFC/Osaifu-Keitai Lock is set, G or appears on the status bar.
- Be careful about remaining battery level because canceling NFC/Osaifu-Keitai Lock becomes unavailable when the battery runs down while NFC/Osaifu-Keitai Lock is set. When the battery runs down, charge the terminal before canceling NFC/Osaifu-Keitai Lock.
- To use Osaifu-Keitai menu while NFC/Osaifu-Keitai Lock is set, cancel NFC/Osaifu-Keitai Lock.
- A lock password for NFC/Osaifu-Keitai cannot be erased even if you reset the terminal.

 When canceling Lock NFC/Osaifu-Keitai, make sure that your terminal contains the same docomo nano UIM card that was in the slot when you enabled Lock NFC/Osaifu-Keitai.

Canceling lock

From the Home screen, ₱ Osaifu-Keitai]

2 •

Ţ [Lock NFC/Osaifu-Keitai]→Authenticate

♦ iDアプリ (iD application)

"iD" refers to electronic money offered by DOCOMO. You can enjoy shopping simply and conveniently only by holding Osaifu-Keitai set with "iD" over the IC card reader in stores. You can register the information of up to two cards and use either one depending on the privilege.

- To use iD with your Osaifu-Keitai, you need to configure settings using the iD application.
- The charges required for iD service (including the annual charge) vary by card issuer.
- Setting up the iD application or checking its information overseas will incur packet communication charges that are different from those in Japan.
- For information on iD application, refer to iD website (http://id-credit.com/ (In Japanese only)).

◆ トルカ (ToruCa)

The ToruCa application allows you to save coupons offered by your favorite shops and other useful information (ToruCa) to your terminal. ToruCa can be obtained via emails or download from websites. You can easily undate your ToruCa.

For details of ToruCa, refer to NTT DOCOMO website.

✓INFORMATION

- For obtaining, displaying or updating ToruCa, a packet communication charge may be applied.
- Depending on the settings configured by the content provider, the following functions may not be available. Updating, sharing ToruCa, displaying map
- Note that ToruCa applications perform background communication necessary for obtaining ToruCa regardless of the setting of Battery saver or Data saver of the terminal and that may incur packet communication charge. —P144, P132

TV (Full Seg/1Seg)

TV is an application for watching programs switching between Full Seg and 1Seg according to reception of signals. It can also receive data broadcasting together with images, voice and sound, and you can also use interactive services using communication function of mobile devices and detail information via communication.

With Full Seg, you can watch a terrestrial digital TV broadcasting service with high-definition quality. With 1Seg, you can watch a terrestrial digital TV broadcasting service for mobile devices.

- For details on the "Full Seg/1Seg" service, check the following website.
 - The Association for Promotion of Advanced Broadcasting Services http://www.anah.or.in/en/

nttp://www.apab.or.jp/en/

♦ Using Full Seg/1Seg

- Full Seg/1Seg is a service provided by TV broadcasters (broadcast stations), etc. Receiving video and audio is free.
 For more information about NHK reception fees, contact NHK
- Information displayed in the area of data broadcasting is "data broadcasting" and "data broadcasting site" information.
 - "Data broadcasting" information is carried in a broadcast, together with images, voice and sound, and "data broadcasting site" information is used to access sites provided by the TV broadcaster (broadcast station).

Applications Applications

Packet communication charge is applied when accessing a site such as a "data broadcasting site" or others.

Some sites require information charges to be used.

About signal

Full Seg/1Seg is one of the broadcasting services, and the receiving signal (broadcast) differs from that of the LTE/FOMA service. For this reason, the signal cannot be received at places where the broadcast does not reach or while broadcasting is out of service, regardless of whether the terminal is outside or inside the LTE/FOMA service area.

Also, in the following places, the signal status may become weak or the signal may not be received even if the terminal is inside the area of a terrestrial TV broadcasting service.

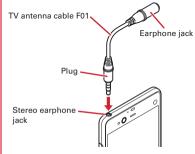
- Places that are far from the broadcast transmission tower
- Places where the signal is disrupted due to the landscaper or structures such as mountain areas or behind buildings
- Places where the signal is weak or does not reach, such as tunnels, basements, or places inside buildings

The included TV antenna cable F01 functions as an antenna when it is connected to the stereo earphone jack of the terminal. Change the direction of the cable, set apart from a human body, or move to the other place to improve the signal reception.

■ The included TV antenna cable F01

TV antenna receives broadcasting signals when you watch TV (Full Seg/1Seg).

- Insert the plug of TV antenna cable F01 to the stereo earphone jack of the terminal horizontally until it clicks.
- When using an earphone, connect the plug (diameter 3.5 mm) of a commercially available earphone etc. to the earphone jack of TV antenna cable F01.



 If the jack of the TV antenna cable F01 is dirty, the connection becomes poor. Clean the jack with a dry cotton swab etc.
 When cleaning, take care not to deform the jack.

♦ Activating TV

From the Home screen, ₩→[TV]

TV watching screen appears.

- When you activate the software for the first time, create a channel list corresponding to the watching area. → P104
- By default, Full Seg/1Seg watching mode is set to [Auto]. On the TV watching screen, tap the TV watching area (→P99)→Tap to switch the watching mode. When [Auto] is set, Full Seg/1Seg switches automatically according to the signal condition. You can check the watching mode on the operation area at the ton of the screen.

Ending TV : (Back)

✓INFORMATION -----

- The minimum battery power to start or continue operating is 6% (while charging, you can activate or continue operating regardless of the battery level).
- It may take a time to acquire image data or broadcasted data when you activate TV or change channels due to characteristic of digital broadcasting.
- Depending on the signal strength, video or audio may be interrupted or stopped.
- When [Video correction] is marked, the video correction engine can be used for 1Seq watching.→P138
- Since TV content is prohibited from copying, screenshot or Capture & Draw/Highlight & Copy is not available.

❖TV watching screen



TV watching screen (Full Seg)

1 Operation area

- Watching mode (Fullseg/One-seg), mode change switch (Auto/Fullseg/Oneseg), screen rotation, and menu icon are displayed. In Full Seg, the following icons are displayed.
- d (Data): Display data broadcasting
- (Remote control): Display the remote control (for the horizontal screen only)
- When the data broadcasting is displayed by tapping (Data) in the vertical screen while watching Full Seg, tap to show the remote controller so as to operate for the data broadcasting with the operation icons.

2 TV watching area

· Flick left or right to switch channels.

3 Control bar (for Full Seg only)

- When you tap an icon, the corresponding screen is displayed in the operation panel area.
- : Show/hide remote controller
- 🔙 : Display a list of channels
- : Display program information
- 4 Operation panel area
 - Displayed contents can be switched by tapping each icon on the control bar.
 - Display data broadcasting while viewing a 1Seg program. To operate data broadcasting, touch the screen to operate or tap control icons displayed below the operation panel area.
- 5 Channel information area

Channel name, signal reception, multi broadcasting icon, and program name are displayed.

- 6 Navigation bar
- 7 Controller

/ : Start/Stop recording

/ > : Switch the channel (Touch and hold to perform a channel search)

- If an unregistered broadcasting station is found by the channel search, you can display the list of channels→ Touch and hold an empty channel→Tap [YES] to add the station to the channel list
- : Pop-up the list of channels

✓INFORMATION

- You can adjust the volume by pressing the volume key when the TV watching screen is displayed.
- On the horizontal screen, the content is displayed full-screen.
 Tap the screen to show the operation area, channel information area, controller, and navigation bar.

TV link

For some data broadcasting programs, link information to related websites (TV link) is displayed. Save TV links to display related websites directly.

Registering TV link

- Select an item that can be registered as a TV link in the data broadcast area
 - Procedure to save TV link varies by the program.

❖ Displaying TV link

On the TV watching screen,

→[TV link]→
Select TV link→[YES]

Connect to the saved website.

❖ Deleting TV link

- On the TV watching screen,

 TV link
- Touch and hold a TV link→[Delete]→[YES]

 Deleting all TV links: ☐→[Delete all]→[YES]

♦ Reserving watching/recording

You can reserve watching or recording TV programs.

A reservation list appears.

- ¶→[New reservation]
- 3 [From Program guide]/[Viewing reservation]/ [Recording reservation]
 - If you select [From Program guide], follow the onscreen instructions.
- Set required items→[Save]→[YES]
 - When the confirmation screen related to the functions available for users and guests, tap [OK]. If [Do not display from now on] is unmarked, the setting screen will not be displayed from next time.

✓INFORMATION

- If you turn the terminal OFF, the schedule will not be executed
- If a timer recording time arrives while you record another program manually, the current recording is terminated and then the timer recording will be started.
- If the screen for updating the application or installation screen appears when [From Program guide] in Step 3, follow the onscreen instructions.

 When using functions that can be used by users or guests or the terminal is being used by other than the owner, Reserve Viewing/Reserve Recording is not available. If the reserved time comes while the terminal is being used by other than owner, the reservation is not performed.

Checking reservation

Check your reservation.

A reservation list appears.

- 7 Tap a reserved item
 - On the reservation list, touch and hold a reservation item→Tap [Edit] to edit contents.
 - On the timer list, touch and hold a reservation item→ [Delete]→Tap [YES] to delete 1 reservation item.

♦ Checking failed reservation

When a reservation is failed, you can check details of the result of the reservation.

In the TV watching screen, ⊟→[Reserve Recording/Viewing]→Ⅱ→[Failed Reservation List]

The list of failed reservation appears.

- 7 Tap an item of the result of the reservation
 - On the failed reservation list, touch and hold a reservation result→[Delete]→Tap [YES] to delete 1 item.

♦ Recording a program

You can record image, sound, subtitle and data broadcasting you are watching.

The maximum of 99 items can be recorded onto the terminal and microSD card each. 1Seg cannot be saved onto microSD card.

 To change where to save the TV programs you record, go to [FullSea Recording setting].→P103

On the TV watching screen, tap TV watching area

The controller appears.

2 (Start recording) Recording starts

On the TV watching screen, tap TV watching

4 [End recording)

Recording ends.

✓INFORMATION

- To save a TV program to be recorded to a microSD card, use the microSD card which is formatted in advance in the terminal.→P144
- To start recording, available terminal memory or microSD card requires 38 MB or more for Full Seg or 1 MB or more for 1Seg. The remaining battery level requires 11% or more (while charging, you can start recording regardless of the battery level).

- If the following occurs while recording Full Seg/1Seg, recording automatically stops.
- Available space on the terminals memory or microSD card is 19 MB or less for Full Seg and 0.5 MB or less for 1Seg
- Remaining battery is 10% or less
- 1Seg recording data size is 2 GB (approximately 600 minutes)
- Recorded TV programs are saved as copyrighted data. It cannot be attached to mail.
- Record programs in a place where airwave condition is stable. A program may not be recorded in a place where the reception condition is unstable.
- While recording, you cannot change channel or Full Seg/1Seg watching mode.
- Recording may not be performed normally when using the function which requires a large amount of loading at the same time.
- If you use data communication services while recording, the recording may not be performed normally because TV signal strength becomes poor.
- If you record a paid broadcast, copy-controlled program or when you move to a different broadcast area, recording may end halfway.

Playing program

On the TV watching screen, | Recorded | program list |

The list of recorded programs is displayed.

 On the recorded program list, tap [DEVICE]/[MEMORY CARD] to change the save location.

Select data

A play screen appears.

- If playback ended halfway in the previous session, playback resumes from where it left off.
- Tap the play screen to display the play controller.
 - : 15 seconds rewinding
 - : Fast rewind (switch to x2/x10/x30/x120 by each tap)
 - : Fast forward (switch to x2/x10/x120 by each tap)

✓INFORMATION

- In the recorded list, touch and hold the data→Tap to select all items or display the property. Only when the recorded data of Full Seg saved to the terminal is selected, [Move to microSD] is displayed and moving is available. Moved data cannot be returned to the terminal.
- To change a title of the item, touch and hold an item on the recorded program list → Enter the title → Tap [OK].
- On the recorded program list, touch and hold an item

 Tan [YFS] to delete 1 item
- On the recorded program list, touch and hold an item→Tap multiple items to delete →Tap [YES] to delete selected item.
- In the recorded list, touch and hold the data → [Check all]
 → [YES] to delete all data.

TV settings

On the TV watching screen,

| On the TV watching screen, | On the TV watching screen, | On the TV watching screen, | On the TV watching screen, | On the TV watching screen, | On the TV watching screen, | On the TV watching screen, | On the TV watching screen, | On the TV watching screen, | On the TV watching screen, | On the TV watching screen, | On the TV watching screen, | On the TV watching screen, | On the TV watching screen, | On the TV watching screen, | On the TV watching screen, | On the TV watching screen, | On the TV watching screen, | On the TV watching screen, | On the TV watching screen, | On the TV watching screen, | On the TV watching screen, | On the TV watching screen, | On the TV watching screen, | On the TV watching screen, | On the TV watching screen, | On the TV watching screen, | On the TV watching screen, | On the TV watching screen, | On the TV watching screen, | On the TV watching screen, | On the TV watching screen, | On the TV watching screen, | On the TV watching screen, | On the TV watching screen, | On the TV watching screen, | On the TV watching screen, | On the TV watching screen, | On the TV watching screen, | On the TV watching screen, | On the TV watching screen, | On the TV watching screen, | On the TV watching screen, | On the TV watching screen, | On the TV watching screen, | On the TV watching screen, | On the TV watching screen, | On the TV watching screen, | On the TV watching screen, | On the TV watching screen, | On the TV watching screen, | On the TV watching screen, | On the TV watching screen, | On the TV watching screen, | On the TV watching screen, | On the TV watching screen, | On the TV watching screen, | On the TV watching screen, | On the TV watching screen, | On the TV watching screen, | On the TV watching screen, | On the TV watching screen, | On the TV watching screen, | On the TV watching screen, | On the TV watching screen, | On the TV watching screen, | On the TV watching screen, | On the TV watching screen, | On the TV watching screen, | On the TV wat

9 Set required items

Superimpose setting: Set displaying/hiding super impose text and language for Full Seg.

Data Broadcasting settings: Configure settings for when data broadcasting is displayed (Use location info, Use device info, Delete station memory, and Zipcode)

Auto Exit Timer: Set time period after which TV is turned off (OFF/10 min./30 min./60 min./90 min./120 min.).

FullSeg Recording settings: Set where to save the TV programs and set whether to also record data broadcasting when recording.

Device ID of receiver: Display the device ID of the receiver.

Notes: Display the information of terms of use.

Software License: Display software licenses

Setting subtitle / sound / video

- In the TV watching screen,

 → Tap [Display subtitles] to set to ON/OFF
 - When viewing 1Seg in landscape view, [Subtitle position] is displayed and you can set the subtitle position.
 - [Sound output], [Audio language], [Subtitle language], [Video switching] are also displayed to set if the watching program is compatible with them.

- **♦** Setting the channel
- Creating channel list
- On the TV watching screen,

 ☐→[Change area]
- Touch and hold an unregistered item→[Area info setting]→Select the region, prefecture, and area
- 3 [OK]
- Switching channel list
- On the TV watching screen,

 →[Change area]

 →Select channel list
 - appears on the right of the currently used channel list.

Camera

Cautions on shooting

- Although the camera is manufactured using extremely highprecision technology, it may contain dots or lines that are always lit or that do not light. When shooting under low light conditions, in particular, white lines or random color dots are likely to appear as noises. This is not a malfunction.
- When activating the camera, white stripes may appear on the screen. This is not a malfunction.
- When the terminal is in high temperature state for a long time, the camera may not be available. Wait until the terminal cools down to use again.
- When the battery is low, the camera may not be available. Fully charge the terminal before using the camera.
- The captured images may be different from actual objects for color and brightness.
- If you try to shoot an object in an environment with intense light source like the sun etc., the images may be dark or noisy.
- Fingerprints or body oil on the lens can affect images. Wipe with a soft cloth before shooting.
- The battery consumption is faster when using the camera.
- When the battery is low, lighting volume for flash may be limited.
- If you do not operate for approximately 2 minutes during stand-by, appears on the status bar.
- When you are approximately 12 cm or more away from an object, the camera automatically focuses on the object according to the set scene mode.

Copyrights and portrait rights

Avoid reproducing, altering, or editing taken or recorded pictures or sounds using the terminal without the copyright holders authorization, because, except for personal use etc., they are prohibited by the Copyright law. Avoid using or altering pictures of others without their consent, because they may infringe on portrait rights.

Note that taking photos or recordings at some demonstrations, performances or exhibitions may be prohibited even when only for personal use.

Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using cameraequipped mobile phones.

If you cause the public any trouble using the terminal, you may be punished under law or regulations (for example, nuisance prevention ordinance).

♦ Viewing shooting screen



Still image shooting screen



Video shooting screen

1 Flash icon

105

- An icon appears showing the setting of the flash.→P109
- 2 Location information icon
 - It appears when location information is set to be added.
 →P109
- 3 White balance adjustment icon

Adjust white balance. Icons indicating the settings of white balance appear at the side of the icon.

- · It does not appear during video recording.
- 4 Exposure correction icon

Adjust exposure correction. Icons indicating the settings of exposure correction appear at the side of the icon.

· It does not appear during video recording.

- 6 Monu icon
 - It does not appear during video recording.
- ® Still images/videos that was taken immediately before

 Tap to check a shot still image/video. When the camera is restarted, the frame is displayed only. Tap to view the shot still images or videos. Tap
 To on the displayed data to open the image list of "Album-Scene" (-P113)
- 7 Shutter button
- 8 Focus frame
 - When the face is not detected, the camera automatically focuses on the center of the screen to show the focus frame. When the face is detected, the camera automatically focuses on the face to show the face detection frame.
- Switch cameras
 Switch to in-camera/out-camera.
- Indicator
 Indicates that current shooting mode is in still image shooting (left) or video shooting (right).
- 11) Start recording button

✓INFORMATION

- If confirmation screen for switching save destination appears when the camera is activated, tap [NO]/[SWITCH].
- When available memory space is reduced, remaining recordable numbers for shooting still images and remaining recordable time for shooting videos are displayed on the shooting screen.

Shooting still images

- From the Home screen, [Camera]
- 7 Display an object on the shooting screen→

 □
 - Shutter sound is heard and a still image is shot.

 You can also shoot a still image by pressing the lower
 - You can also shoot a still image by pressing the lower part of the volume key.
- Main operations on the still image shooting screen Zooming: Pinch-out/pinch-in the screen.
- Pinch-out/pinch-in to show a slide bar. You can zoom using the slide bar. Zoom function is not available for in-camera.
- Switching to in-camera/out-camera: On the shooting screen,
- Switching to the video shooting screen : Flick the shooting screen left
- To return to the still image shooting screen, flick the video shooting screen right

♦ Continuous shooting

You can shoot continuously up to 100 images.

- Continuous shooting mode is not available for shooting with in-camera, shooting with HDR mode, flash or self timer settings.
- From the Home screen, [Camera]
- ¶ [MENU]→[RapidPic]

Continuous shooting screen appears.

3 Display an object on the shooting screen →

While pressing , continuous shooting and saving are kept. When you release the finger from , continuous shooting ends.

- You can also shoot images continuously by holding down the lower part of the volume key.
- Main operations on the continuous shooting screen Zooming: Pinch-out/pinch-in the screen.
- Pinch-out/pinch-in to show a slide bar. You can zoom using the slide bar.

Switching to the video shooting screen: Flick the shooting screen left

 When you flick the switched video shooting screen right, the still image shooting screen appears.

✓INFORMATION

 Continuous shooting stops when saving destination becomes low on memory. In continuous shooting mode, you can set the picture size (3MP 2048×1536/Fit screen 1920×1080/Mobile email 640×480), location information, save location, Touch shutter, grid view, and Exposure/WB adjust. +P108

♦ Panorama shooting

You can shoot a panoramic image by slowly swiveling the camera to the left or right.

- Panorama shooting is not available for in-camera.
- From the Home screen, [Camera]
- ¶ [MENU] → [Panorama]
- 3 Display an object on the shooting screen→
 (Start)

Shooting start sound is heard and a shooting is started.

- You can also start shooting by pressing the lower part of the volume key.
- If you move the camera too fast, "Too fast" appears.
 Move the camera so that the message does not appear.
- ✓ LONE (DONE)

Shooting end sound is heard, shooting stops and a panorama image is saved.

- You can also stop shooting by pressing the lower part of the volume key.
 When the shooting is finished while moving the
- When the shooting is finished while moving the camera, the shooting end sound does not sound.
- Main operations on the panorama shooting screen
- Return to the previous shooting mode before setting to the panorama shooting screen.

♦ Automatic still image shooting

The terminal automatically adjusts settings and shoots pictures in the following functions.

Image stabilizer is always turned on.

■ Omakase Auto focus

When the distance from an object is approximately 12 cm or more, the camera automatically focuses on a pointed object.

 When an object includes people, the face detection frame appears first to be focused on. If a face is not detected, the center of the screen is in focus.

■ Touch focus

Tap an object on the shooting screen to automatically focus on. With [Touch shutter] set to ON, the camera makes an auto focus lock sound when the object comes into focus, and takes the picture as it makes a shutter sound.—P109

Touch focus is not compatible with in-camera.

■ White balance

Automatically adjust for shooting in natural color shade under various sources of light (sunlight, cloudy sky, artificial source of light such as incandescent or fluorescent).

Scene mode

Automatically recognize according to object and circumstance and switch suitable shooting mode.

 When QR code is displayed, QR code is scanned and results are shown

Automatic exposure

Automatically adjust exposure according to the ambient lighting. When face detection frame of auto focus appears, exposure is fixed based on the brightness of face. If you want to use an object as the base, tap the object to fix the exposure. The object is given priority even if a face is detected.

Adjust flicker

Reduce flicker noise or stripe pattern emerged under a fluorescent lamp etc.

♦ Shooting settings for still image

Tap [MENU] displayed on the still image shooting screen to change the following shooting settings.

- Some items cannot be selected depending on the combinations.
- . Some items cannot be set for the in-camera.
- If the Camera is activated from other than the Home screen or the application list screen, some settings are unavailable.

■ Camera Mode

Tap Still/RapidPic/Video/HighSpeedVideo/Panorama/QR code to select camera mode.

■ Picture Size

Select shooting size.

 When you activate Camera from other application such as phonebook, an image size may change temporarily to [Fit screen 1920×1080].

Flach

Select Flash setting from auto flash (,)/flash ()/off (). If auto-flash is set, when the camera determines that lighting is insufficient, the flash automatically lights.

- If flash () is set, the icon is always displayed on the still image shooting screen. If auto flash () or off () is set, the icon is displayed on the still image shooting screen when the camera determines that lighting is insufficient. You can change the settings by tapping the displayed icon.
- If "RapidPic" or "HDR mode" is set, the flash cannot be set.
 Also depending on the night scene, it may not turn on.

■ HDR mode

Shoot 2 images in different exposure time (long exposure and short exposure) and compose a still image that white out or crushed blacks is reduced.

 The real-time HDR is equipped with the terminal, so you can check the status of composited HDR on the shooting screen during shooting.

■ SelfTimer

Set to shoot a picture 2 seconds ($^{\circ}$ 2), 3 seconds ($^{\circ}$ 3), or 5 seconds ($^{\circ}$ 5) after the shutter is pressed.

■ Display grid

Set to display auxiliary lines (grid) on the shooting screen as an assistant for photo composition.

Others

Location: Set to add location information to shot images.

When location information is set to be added, icon of short obtaining location information (not obtained) appears, then

- for completion of obtaining appears on the shooting screen.
- Save: Select data saving location (Terminal/SD card).
- If the selected saving destination is low on memory, a message appears and switch saving destination temporarily (except during continuous shooting).

Touch shutter: Set to shoot with auto focus lock sound and shutter sound by tapping an object when the object is focused on.

In continuous mode, only one image is shot.

Exposure/WB: Set whether to display the icons for exposure correction [2]/white balance adjustment [WB] on the shooting screen

Face Beauty: Can be set with in-camera. When turning the item to ON () in the Setting menu, appears in the shooting screen. Tap to adjust the beauty effect (0 - 8).

♦ Shooting video

- From the Home screen, [Camera]
- 2 Flick the screen left

A video shooting screen appears.

Display an object on the shooting screen → (Start)

Shooting start sound is heard and a shooting is started.

 You can also start shooting by pressing the lower part of the volume key.

 When shooting starts, elapsed time appears on the shooting screen

⚠ (Stop)

Shooting end sound is heard and a shooting stops.

- You can also stop shooting by pressing the lower part of the volume key.
- Recording stops when saving location become low on memory or when file size of recorded data reaches the limit (approx. 4 GB). Also, recording stops when a call is received while recording.

■ Main operations on the video shooting screen

Shooting still image while recording: Tap shown while recording a video

 The shutter sound is not emitted for still image shooting while recording video.

Zooming: Pinch-out/pinch-in the screen

- Pinch-out/pinch-in to show a slide bar. You can zoom using the slide bar. Zoom function is not available for in-camera.
- · Zoom function is available while recording.

Switching to in-camera/out-camera: On the shooting screen

Switching to the still image shooting screen: Flick the shooting screen right

Shooting High speed videos

You can shoot scenes with motions such as sport etc. with "HighSpeedVideo" camera mode and edit so that the videos can be played partially in slow-motion.

- The shooting picture size of HighSpeedVideo is "HD" (1280×720) only and it cannot be changed.
- From the Home screen, [Camera]
- ¶ [MENU]→[HighSpeedVideo]
- 3 Display an object on the shooting screen→

 (Start)

Shooting start sound is heard and a shooting is started.

 Alternatively, press the volume down key to start shooting.

🚹 🕟 (Stop)

Shooting end sound is heard and a shooting stops and the video is saved

 Alternatively, press the volume down key to stop shooting.

■ Main operations of HighSpeedVideo

Switching to the video shooting screen: Flick the shooting screen left

 When you flick the switched video shooting screen right, the still image shooting screen appears.

❖ Editing high speed videos

Edit a range of shot high speed video to be played in slow motion

 The range specified for slow motion is played in 1/4 of the normal play speed. The audio cannot be played and only the image can be played.

1 From the Home screen, [Album-Scene]

The image list appears.

• Q is displayed for the high speed video.

Select a high speed video

The high speed video play screen appears.

3 On the high speed video play screen, The edit screen appears.

 When the "Edit slow motion video" explanation screen appears, tap [OK] to open the edit screen.

4 Select the range of slow motion part with 🥄 /

Move (Start point) and then tap (Play) to check the edit result.

[Save]

It saves as another video file.

 For the video file after saved, a is not displayed in the image list.

✓INFORMATION -----

 For a high speed video that is shot when the camera response is not good due to heat etc. of the terminal and lack of certain frame rates, editing may not be available.

♦ Automatic video recording

The terminal automatically adjusts settings and records video in the following functions.

Recording voice is always turned on.

Auto focus

Focus on the center of the screen before or while recording.

■ White halance

Automatically adjust for shooting in natural color shade under various sources of light (sunlight, cloudy sky, artificial source of light such as incandescent or fluorescent).

Adjust flicker

Reduce flicker noise or stripe pattern emerged under a fluorescent lamp etc.

♦ Shooting settings for video

Tap [MENU] displayed on the video shooting screen to change the following shooting settings.

- Some items cannot be selected depending on the combinations
- · Some items cannot be set for the in-camera.

■ Camera Mode

Tap Still/RapidPic/Video/HighSpeedVideo/Panorama/QR code to select camera mode.

■ Movie Size

Select shooting size.

Light

Set whether to automatically turn on the flash when recording in a dark place.

| | Applications

■ HDR mode (unavailable for HighSpeedVideo)

Set to adjust contrasting of screen for video with crushed blacks reduced even in backlight

■ Steady Video (unavailable for HighSpeedVideo) Set whether to use Steady Video

- Enabling the Steady Video function makes the shooting range narrower.
- When the picture size is set to 4K, Steady Video is not available.

■ Save

Select data saving location (Terminal/SD card).

 If the selected saving destination is low on memory, a message appears and switches saving destination temporarily (recording stops during video recording).

■ Exposure/WB

Set whether to display the icons for exposure correction () white balance adjustment () on the shooting screen.



Scan OR code data and use it

- QR code cannot be scanned for some versions (type and size)
- Scratches, dirt, damages, low print quality and the strong reflection of light may disable code reading.

*Reading with QR code reader

- Scan using the camera with the distance of approximately 12 cm or more from an object (OR code).
- If the QR code is not scanned well, try to change the distance between the QR code and camera, the angle or direction of camera
- From the Home screen, [Camera]
- 7 [MENU]→[QR code]

The QR code shooting screen appears.

3 Display a QR code on the shooting screen→ Scan

A confirmation sound is played when scanning is complete and the scanned data appears.

Scanning divided data:

One data item divided into multiple (up to 16) QR codes can be scanned and be displayed as a combined data.

Continue reading if unscanned data exists.

Closing the QR code shooting screen : [←]

 Return to the previous shooting mode before setting to Reading with QR code reader.

Turning the light ON/OFF : [MENU]→[Light ON]/[Light OFF]

Check scanned data

Saving data : On the scanned data, [MENU]→[Save to history]→Tap history field

Displaying history: On the QR code shooting screen, [MENU]→[History]→Select a history

❖ Using QR code data

Use the scanned QR code data.

Displayed menu options may vary depending on the scanned data

Saving all data in the phonebook : [MENU]→[Batch register contacts]→Save in the phonebook

Creating mail: Select mail address to create a message →
Create a mail

Connecting to the website or home page : Select URL Making a call : Select a phone number → ■

Album-Scene

You can view still images or videos shot with the camera or downloaded to the terminal

 The following file types of data can be displayed/played. However, some files may not be viewed/played back.
 Still image: JPEG, BMP, GIF*, PNG, WEBP
 Video: H 263 H 264 H 265 MPEG-4 VPR VP9

- * GIF animation cannot be played
- Some specifications vary from "Scene" by ripplex that is released on Google Play.

♦ Viewing still image/Playing video

From the Home screen, [Album-Scene]
Image list screen appears.

Select an image

- Flick the screen left and right to switch between the previous and next screen.
- Pinch-out or in the screen to zoom-out or zoom-in.
- For video, tap to play. Press the volume key to adjust sound volume, or with displayed icon or slider, play, pause, fast-rewind, fast-forward, etc.

Main icons and functions

*1: Display Settings, Help, About Scene

(a)*2: Display update information, comments on share album, or notice of adding picture etc.

: Various operations for sending or deleting pictures etc.

: Select photos or videos to show in the list

- : Activate camera
- Displayed items vary depending on the displayed screen or operation status.
- *1 Or slide your finger from left edge to right on the screen.
- *2 Or slide your finger from right edge to left on the screen.

Categorizing and viewing images

You can categorize images into album.

- On the image list screen, ; →[Organize]

 The Organize screen is displayed
- 2 Touch and hold a image → Drag to an album

 Categorize multiple images: Select multiple images →

 Touch and hold images → Drag to an album
 - Tap the date on the screen to select all shot images with the date
 - When images are selected with check mark, number of selected items is displayed at the top of the screen.
 Tap the selected image to cancel selected status.
 - Adding an album : [Create new album]→Enter an album name→[OK]

✓INFORMATION -----

 From the image list screen, slide your finger from center to right on the screen to display the Organize screen.

HF Plaver

Play music contents saved in the internal storage or a microSD card

- File formats/codecs that can be played with HF Player are WAV, AIFF, FLAC, ALAC, DSF, DSDIFF, MP3, AAC and Ogg-Vorbis, However, some files may not be played.
- The terminal supports play of high-resolution audio source. File types that can be played are 44.1kHz, 48kHz, 88.2kHz, 96kHz, 176.4kHz, 192kHz of sampling frequency, 24-bit of quantization bit rate in FLAC, PCM, AIFF, ALAC formats with 2ch channels. And DSD file with 2.8MHz, 5.6MHz, 11.2MHz of sampling frequency with 2ch channels is converted to PCM to play.
- To play high-resolution audio source, connect the earphone which is compatible with the high-resolution to the stereo earphone jack and the play the files in the terminal or microSD card. If you use the speaker or a Bluetooth headset, the files may not be played in high-resolution quality depending on high-resolution support condition of connected device. Also, they may not be played in high-resolution quality depending on usage condition such as other sound is sounding.
- HF Player does not support Dolby Audio (→P142).
- For transfer music files form a PC to a microSD card, refer to "Operating data on the terminal from a PC".→P175

1]4 Applications

Playing music

1 From the Home screen, [HF Player]

9 Select the tab

The list screen for each tab (Folder/Playlists/Artists/ Albums/Songs/Genres/Compilations/Composers/Format) appears.

Select the song

A play screen appears.

Play screen



Music play screen

- 1 Displaying the list screen
- 2 Album artwork
 - Tap to show/hide song information such as file format, composer name, etc.
- 3 Play position, play time
 - · Drag the bar left or right to change the play position.

(4) Show lyrics

- Show lyric and the tap A at the upper right to change the font size. Also, tap 2 at the upper left to use the function which chases the lyric according to play of song.
- ⑤ Title/Δrtist/Δlhum name
- 6 Repeat
 - Each time tapping the item, Repeat off (→) → One song repeat (→) → All song repeat (→) switches.
- 7 Playing operation
 - Pause/Play
 - / Play the previous/next file.
 - Go back to the top of the file depending on the operation status.
- 8 Volume adjustment
- · Drag it left or right to adjust sound volume.
- 9 Display the Settings menu.
- 10 Display the playlist
 - After you tap [Edit cue], tap to delete from the list, or drag up or down to sort the play order.
 - Tap [Save as playlist] to save the listed songs to play as a new playlist.
- 11 Control equalizer

When you turn the equalizer to ON (Tap of (4) to o) and then tap o, you can select the equalizer type from [Preset EO]/[Featured EO], or adjust the sound volume.

- 12 Add to playlist
- (3) Shuffle ON/OFF
- 14 Equalizer ON/OFF

✓INFORMATION -----

 To delete a song, select Artists/Albums/Songs tab to display the list and then touch and hold the song title or album name →[Delete]→[OK].

♦ Purchasing from d music etc.

You can purchase or download songs or albums via d music or e-onkyo music.

- From the Home screen, [HF Player]
- 7 M→[Link to "d music"]/[Shop(Web Link)]
- Using playlist

Register songs to the play list to play songs only you like.

- From the Home screen, [HF Player]→[Playlists]
 Play list screen appears.
- 2 [New]→[New Playlist]→Enter a playlist name →[OK]
- 3 [Add Songs]

The list screen appears.

- Select songs to add to the list→[Save]
 - You can select by selecting the tab in the list screen and then mark songs, or marking artist names or album names. Also, tap the artist name or album name and then select only songs to add.
- [Done]

The created playlist screen appears.

✓INFORMATION -----

- Select a play list on the play list screen→Select a song to play.
- To sort the playlists, in the playlist list screen, [Edit]→Drag

 of the playlist up or down to move→[Done].
- To delete the playlist, in the playlist list screen, touch and hold the playlist → [Delete] → [OK].
- To edit a play list, on the play list screen, select a play list→ [Edit].
- To delete songs from the playlist, in the song list screen of playlist, touch and hold the song →[Delete]→[OK].

Location data/GPS

You can use the GPS function on the terminal and a compatible application to check your current location or search for routes to your destination.

 The terminal is equipped with GPS receiver using satellite signal for measuring current location. When using GPS function, a packet communication charge may be applied.

♦ Using the GPS function

- Note that DOCOMO is not liable for any damages that may occur as a result of irregularities in the GPS system.
- Note that DOCOMO is not liable for pure economic loss if you cannot confirm the positioning (communication) result with the terminal because of failure, malfunction or external factors such as power failure (including battery exhaustion).
- You cannot use the terminal as a navigation system for aircraft, vehicles, persons, etc. For this reason, note that DOCOMO is not liable for losses incurred by navigation performed by using location information.
- You cannot use the terminal as a high-accuracy measurement GPS. Note that DOCOMO shall have no liabilities whatsoever even if you suffer damage or loss due to a deviation of the location information.
- GPS is a service operated by the USA Department of Defense, so the GPS radio wave condition may be controlled (accuracy degraded, radio wave suspended, etc.) for reasons of US national security.
- Wireless communications products (mobile phones, data detectors, etc.) might interfere with satellite signals and cause signal reception to become unstable.

 The displayed map based on the acquired location information (latitude and longitude information) may be inaccurate because of the legal system in each country and area.

■ Where radio waves are difficult to receive

Note that since GPS is using radio waves for satellites, under the following conditions, radio waves might not be able to be received or might be difficult to receive. Also, do not cover the GPS antenna (~P30) with your hand.

- · Inside or immediately under a building
- Inside a basement or tunnel, and below the ground or water
 Inside a bag or box
- In buildings-clustered or residential area
- Inside or under a thick covering of trees
- · Near a high-voltage cable
- In a car, inside a train compartment
- · Bad weather such as heavy rain or snow
- When there are obstructions (people or objects) near the terminal

Precautions for using electronic compass

An electronic compass is equipped with the terminal and it senses the faint fluctuation in the magnetic field of the earth to calculate directions.

- The electronic compass calculates directions by sensing the faint fluctuation in the magnetic field of the earth. Therefore, the magnetic field may not be sensed or a direction may not be displayed correctly when the terminal is used inside or near buildings (including underground shopping area), vehicles, metal facilities (an elevator etc.), metal equipment (a guardrail, pedestrian bridge, etc.), high-tension wires, wires, rocks containing magnetism, metal (metal desk, locker, etc.), permanent magnet (a magnetic necklace, bag fastening, etc.), home appliances (a TV, computer, speaker, etc.)
- When an applications such as "Maps" cannot calculate directions correctly, adjust the electronic compass.

Adjusting the electronic compass

■ Operation method

While using an application such as "Maps" that uses the electronic compass, move the terminal like describing a big figure of eight, twisting your wrist for around 10 seconds.

Setting Location

Allow applications to use location information.

- Items or displays may vary depending on the version of the application.
- From the Home screen, ⊞→[Settings]→
 [Location/Accounts]→[Location]
- 2 Tap the button at the upper right of the screen to turn [Location] to On

The user agreement screen appears.

- **?** [AGREE]
- [Mode]→Select a mode

✓INFORMATION -----

- To measure highly accurate location information, use GPS in a place with sky view.
- · Note that this function increases power consumption.

118

♦ Google Maps

The Google Maps™ application lets you measure your current location, find locations and calculate routes

- To use Google Maps, a network connection via LTE/3G/ GPRS network or Wi-Fi is required.
- To measure your current location, turn [Location] to On in advance →P118
- · Google Maps do not cover all countries and cities.

From the Home screen, [Google]→[Maps]

- For operations of Google Maps, flick right the left edge of the screen to refer Help or Tips and Tricks
- When the confirmation screen for changing location information settings and accuracy for measuring current location, follow on-screen instructions

Schedule

You can manage your schedule.

From the Home screen, [ドコモクラウド (docomo cloud)]→[Schedule]

The calendar screen appears.

• If a screen for access to cloud services appears, tap [クラウドサービスを設定する (Set cloud service)] or [後で設定する (Not now)].

♦ Registering schedule

- On the calendar screen,
- To set alarm etc., tap [Display input option].
- 2 Set required items→[Save]
 Schedule is registered.
- When the notification date/time is reached

If you set alarm when registering schedule, appears on the status bar when set date/time is reached.

Open the Notification panel→Tap the notification

Detailed screen appears.

Displaying schedule

Display information of registered schedule.

- On the calendar screen, tap a date→Tap a
- 2 Check the schedule

Editing schedule : [Edit]→Edit schedule→[Save]
Deleting schedule : []→[Delete one]→[DELETE]

✓INFORMATION

- From the calendar screen, tap to perform various operations such as settings.
- From the calendar screen, tap : to perform various operations such as jumping date.

Clock

You can use the alarm, clock, timer, stopwatch and world clock

- Displaying the clock
- From the Home screen, ⊞→[Clock]
 The clock screen is displayed.

✓INFORMATION

- To display the world clock on the CLOCK screen, on the CLOCK screen, tap → Mark cities.
- **♦** Using alarms
- From the Home screen, P→[Clock]
- 2 [ALARM]

The alarm screen is displayed.

- 3 Set a time→[OK]
- Set required items

/ Set ON/OFF of created time of alarm.

Repeat : Set whether to repeat.

Set the alarm sound.

Vibrate: Set ON/OFF of Vibrate.

Label: Enter a label.

: Delete alarm while creating.

in Displayed within 2 hours until the alarm sounds to cancel the alarm.

✓INFORMATION -----

- To undo deleting, tap [UNDO] immediately after deleting.

Using timers

- From the Home screen, P → [Clock]
- 2 [TIMER]
 The timer screen appears.
- 3 Enter time→

 The countdown starts
- When the countdown ends, [STOP]/[ADD 1
 - Pausing the countdown : During the countdown,
 - To restart the countdown, tap .
 Resetting the countdown: While pausing the countdown,
 - [RESET]
 - Deleting a timer : [DELETE]
 - Adding a timer : [ADD TIMER] → Enter a time →
 - Slide up or down the timer screen to display another timer.
 - Adding 1 minute : During the countdown, [+1:00]
 - Add 1 minute for countdown every time it is tapped.

Using stopwatch

- From the Home screen, ₩→[Clock]
- 1 (STOPWATCH)

The stopwatch screen is displayed.

3

The measurement starts.

Adding a lap time: While measuring, [LAP]

To restart the measurement, tap

Resetting the measurement : While measuring or pausing, [RESET]

Sharing the result : While pausing the measurement, [SHARE]

121

Calculator

From the Home screen, H→[Calculator]

Calculate

Deleting the input numbers and symbols: [DEL]
Deleting all mathematical expressions: [DEL] (Touch and hold)/ICI RI

Displaying the function pad: Slide left the right end of the pad

 Alternatively, tilt the terminal horizontal to display the function pad.

✓INFORMATION

 When calculation result is displayed, you can add a mathematical expression to the result.

Search

Use "Google" application to search.

 Items or displays may vary depending on the version of the application.

♦ Google Search

You can search in the website by entering keywords. Also, you can use the feed to check the information related to your current location (weather, traffic condition, etc.).

1 From the Home screen, [Google] → [Google]

 When you activate the application for the first time, the use of feed screen appears. Follow the on-screen instructions

9 Enter a keyword

Search suggestions appear according to the character entry.

- Enter characters and tap \(\mathbb{Q} \) to display search suggestions in the website.
- Select from search suggestions

♦ Voice Search

You can search in the website by entering keywords by voice

- From the Home screen, [Google]→[Google]→

 ↓→Say a keyword to the mouthpiece/
 microphone
- 2 Select a search suggestion from the website

✓INFORMATION

 For details on Google search and the feed, flick the left end of the Google Search screen right→Tap [Help] to see the Help.

docomo Data Copy

With "docomo Data Copy", you can copy the data saved in the terminal to another terminal, or back up/restore the data. Use this application for transferring data when you change the model, or backing up your important data at regular intervals.

 Depending on OS or file format, copying, backing up or restoring may not be performed correctly.

♦ Data Copy

You can copy your data such as phonebook, images, etc. to another terminal with one-to-one direct communication, not using the Internet.

Activate "Data Copy" of both the source terminal and the destination terminal, and line them up before use.

- From the Home screen, ⊞→[Data Copy]→
 [Data transfer]
 - . Follow the on-screen instructions.
 - Installing this application is required for both the source terminal and the destination terminal. Available for download from NTT DOCOMO website, if it is not installed yet.
 - Communication methods vary depending on the use of devices or OS version.
 - For details about compatibility or information, see NTT DOCOMO website.

♦ Backing up to/Restoring from microSD

You can transfer or back up the data such as phonebook entries or images using a microSD card.

- Do not remove the microSD card from the terminal or turn off the terminal during backup or restoration. Data may be damaged.
- Some items may be changed or deleted when the other terminal's data such as phonebook entries (phone number etc.) differ from the terminal. Available characters in phonebooks may vary depending on each terminal, some may be deleted.
- Phonebook data of docomo account and data registered in the terminal are available for back up.
- When backing up phonebook entries to microSD card, entries without name cannot be copied.
- When available memory space of microSD card is not enough, backup may not be executed. In such case, delete unnecessary files from the microSD card to save the memory space.
- When the remaining battery gets low, backup or restoration may not be executed. In such case, charge the battery of the terminal and then back up or restore.
- You can back up only the data such as still images and movies stored in the terminal with this application. The data stored in a microSD card cannot be backed up.

Backup

Back up the phonebook data media files etc.

- From the Home screen, ∰→[Data Copy]→
 [Backup & Restore]
- 2 [Backup]→Place a check mark on the data to back up→[Start backup]→[BACKUP]
- Selected data is saved to a microSD card.
- 3 [Back to top]

Restoring

Restore the phonebook data, media files, etc. backed up to a microSD card to the terminal

- From the Home screen, ∰→[Data Copy]→
 [Backup & Restore]
- 2 [Restore]→Tap [Select] of the data type to restore→Place a check mark on the data to restore→[Select]
- 3 Select restore method → [Start restore] → [RESTORE]
 - Selecting restore method is not required depending on the data type.
- Selected data is restored to the terminal.
- [Back to top]

Copying phonebook data to docomo account

Copy phonebook data saved to your Google account or the terminal to your docomo account.

- From the Home screen, ∰→[Data Copy]→
 [Backup & Restore]
- 2 [Phonebook account copy]→Tap [Select] of the phonebook to copy→[OVERWRITE]/[ADD]
 - · Copied contacts are saved to your docomo account
- **?** [OK]
- Backing up to/Restoring to docomo cloud

Use the cloud (Data storage BOX) to back up or restore the call history or music.

- From the Home screen, ⊞→[Data Copy]→:→
 [Backup/Restore to Cloud]
- [Backup] or [Restore]
 - · Follow the onscreen instructions.
 - If you do not sign in to docomo cloud, the confirmation screen appears.

✓INFORMATION -----

- Periodical backup is not executed at the specified time while the screen is locked or the emergency mode is running and will be executed when activating the function is available next time
- Note that a packet communication charge may be high, if you set Periodical backup of Data Storage BOX.

Settings

Setting menu

Make various settings from the Settings menu.

From the Home screen, P→ [Settings]

12 categories are displayed (TILE).

- Tap [LIST] to display the Settings menu in the list. To return to the tile display, tap [TILE].
- Tap [SEARCH] to search the item of the Settings menu.

Category		Page
Display/Sound/ Apps	Display & Wallpaper	P137
	Notifications	P139
	Sound	P140
	Apps	P143
	Storage	P144
	Memory	P145
	Gestures	P146
Location/ Accounts	Location	P118
	Accounts	P158
	Backup & reset	P161
Battery		P144

Category		Page
Wireless &	Wi-Fi	P127
networks	Bluetooth	P170
	NFC/Osaifu-Keitai Settings	P94, P173
	Airplane mode	P133
	Tethering	P133
	VPN	P135
	Cellular networks	P136, P181
	Network settings reset	P137
Data usage		P132
Security		P147
Google		P159
Languages & input		P160
Useful tools		P162
docomo service/cloud		P146
Users		P145
System	Date & time	P166
	Accessibility	P166
	Printing	P175
	About phone	P167

✓INFORMATION

 [SUGGESTIONS] may be displayed in the top right of the tile display screen depending on the terminal usage. Tap to show the items as "Suggestions" to prompt you to make setting.

Wi-Fi

Connect to home network, company network, or wireless LAN access points for public wireless LAN services using Wi-Fi function of the terminal to use mail and Internet. To connect to a wireless access point, set the connection information.

■ Reception interference caused by Bluetooth function

Wireless LAN (IEEE802.11b/g/n) and Bluetooth function use the same frequency band (2.4GHz). Therefore, if you use the wireless LAN function and Bluetooth function at the same time, reception interference may occur and the communication speed may lower, noise may occur, or connection may not be established. Do not use them simultaneously

Also, the similar phenomenon may occur when a Bluetooth device is used nearby even if you use only the wireless LAN function of the terminal. In these cases, do the following.

- Keep the terminal approximately 10 m or more away from a Bluetooth device.
- If you use within approximately 10 m, turn off the Bluetooth device

Turning Wi-Fi to On to connect network

- From the Home screen, P→[Settings]→
 [Wireless & networks]→[Wi-Fi]
- 2 Tap the button at the upper right of the screen to turn [Wi-Fi] to On
- 2 Select a Wi-Fi network
 - To connect to a protected Wi-Fi network, enter the password and then tap [CONNECT].
 - After Wi-Fi network is selected, a screen for selecting connection may appear.

✓INFORMATION -----

- Even when Wi-Fi function is on, packet communication is available. However, while Wi-Fi network is connected, Wi-Fi takes precedence. When a Wi-Fi network is disconnected, connection is automatically switched to LTE/3G/GPRS network. Note that packet communication charge may be applied if network connection stays switched.
- When [auto-IP] is marked in Wi-Fi advanced setting, [Private IP address has been assigned. Connection is restricted.] may be displayed when the DHCP sever on an access point does not operate. Check the DHCP setting of the access point. The similar message persists even if you recheck the setting of the access point, it is possible that the correct IP address is not acquired. Check the signal status and reconnect.

- When you save multiple Wi-Fi networks, to switch the connection, select a Wi-Fi network to connect and then tap CONNECT]. The current Wi-Fi network is disconnected and the selected Wi-Fi network is switched automatically.
 - * The information of disconnected network is not deleted. You can reconnect it by connecting operation.

♦ Scanning Wi-Fi networks

- Set Wi-Fi to On in advance.
- From the Home screen, ⊞→[Settings]→
 [Wireless & networks]→[Wi-Fi]
- 2 [MENU]→[Refresh]
- ◆ Adding Wi-Fi network

Enter network SSID or security information to add Wi-Fi network manually.

- · Set Wi-Fi to On in advance.
- From the Home screen, ∰→[Settings]→
 [Wireless & networks]→[Wi-Fi]
- [Add network]
- 3 Enter a network SSID of Wi-Fi network to add →Select security
 - Security can be set to [None], [WEP], [WPA/WPA2 PSK] or [802.1x EAP].

- Enter additional security information as required → [SAVE]
- ♦ Deleting Wi-Fi network connecting information
- From the Home screen, ∰→[Settings]→
 [Wireless & networks]→[Wi-Fi]
- 2 Select the connected Wi-Fi network→
 [FORGET]
- Connecting Wi-Fi network easily

When using the wireless LAN access point which supports AOSS™ system or WPS system, connection can be established with simple operation.

- · Set Wi-Fi to On in advance.
- From the Home screen, ⊞→[Settings]→
 [Wireless & networks]→[Wi-Fi]
- ¶

 [MENU]→[Advanced]→[Easy Settings]

 [Incomplete of the content of the cont
- Select the registration method

AOSS™ system : [AOSS system]→Tap [AOSS] button→
Operate on the access point→On the connection
completion screen, [Finish]

WPS system: [WPS system]→[Push button system]/[PIN entry system (8 digits)]/[PIN entry system (4 digits)]→ Onerate on the access point

 In case of push button method, press a dedicated button on an access point. In case of PIN entry method, enter PIN code displayed on the terminal to an access point device.

✓INFORMATION -----

- Some wireless LAN access points, connection by AOSS™
 may not be established. If connection is failed, try connecting
 by WPS system or manual setting.
- If he security is set to WEP on the wireless LAN access point, WPS system is not available.

◆ Connecting other devices with Wi-Fi

Connect between Wi-Fi Direct devices without routing an access point etc.

- . Set Wi-Fi to On in advance.
- To exchange data such as videos or still images using Wi-Fi Direct, download an application compatible with data exchange via Wi-Fi Direct from Play Store and install it.
- From the Home screen, ∰→[Settings]→
 [Wireless & networks]→[Wi-Fi]
- ¶ [MENU]→[Advanced]→[Wi-Fi Direct]
 - When a Wi-Fi Direct device does not appear, tap [SEARCH FOR DEVICES].

- Tap the detected Wi-Fi Direct device

 Disconnecting Wi-Fi Direct device: Tap the connected

 Wi-Fi Direct device → (OK)
- When connection request is sent from the other Wi-Fi Direct device

When an invitation screen for connecting appears, tap IACCEPTI.

Multi-connection

Set whether to use Wi-Fi network and packet communication (LTE/3G) simultaneously for the comfortable Internet connection When Multi-connection is set to ON, you can download or stream various contents such as videos and music with high-speed communication (High-speed download)

- Set Wi-Fi to On to connect to Wi-Fi network in advance.→ P127
- A packet communication charge may be applied using Multi-connection since it also uses packet communication (LTE/3G). If you do not want to use packet communication, turn off Multi-connection.
- Multi-connection may not be available depending on the application.
- Depending on the connected Wi-Fi network, high-speed communication may not be available.
- From the Home screen, ⊞→[Settings]→
 [Wireless & networks]→[Wi-Fi]
- ¶ [MENU]→[Advanced]→[Multi-connection]
- 2 Set [Multi-connection] to ON

Set each item

- Tap [Select mode] to select the communication mode for Multi-connection
- When a Wi-Fi network is registered in [Frequently used hotspot], the terminal preferentially use the Wi-Fi when you are connected to the registered Wi-Fi network.

♦ About applications compatible with Multi-connection

The applications displayed by tapping [Select application] are the Multi-connection targets.

✓INFORMATION

- When the running application is selected in [Select application], enabling the setting may take time.
 To enable the setting immediately, end the running application and restart the terminal.
- Some functions may be restricted when using Wi-Fi for the site that distinguishes network connection (dメニュー (dmenu)→Items in "My docomo (お客様サポート)" (My docomo (customer support)) etc.). In that case, turn Wi-Fi to Off before use.
- · Multi-connection cannot be used in the following cases.
 - In Airplane mode
 - During international roaming
 - Tethering in use
 - Connected to VPN
 - VPN in connection
- If the Wi-Fi network registered in [Frequently used hotspot] behaves erratically, some applications that usually restrict communications to Wi-Fi may temporarily switch over to packet communications (LTE/3G).

- When Multi-connection is set to OFF, high-speed download also turns OFF.
- If data amount exceeds the limit of subscribed budget plan and transmission speed is limited, Multi-connection does not work

♦ Wi-Fi Auto ON/ΩFF

Turn Wi-Fi function to ON/OFF automatically by using the information from the mobile network base station Set whether to turn the Wi-Fi function to ON automatically when the terminal detects the area where you have connected to Wi-Fi, or turn it to OFF automatically when the terminal detects an area where you have not connected to Wi-Fi.

- From the Home screen, ⊞→[Settings]→
 [Wireless & networks]→[Wi-Fi]
- 2 [MENU]→[Advanced]→Mark/Unmark [Wi-Fi

✓INFORMATION -----

- The area where you have connected to an access point for 2 minutes or more consecutively with the function ON can be detected as an area where you have connected to Wi-Fi.
- This function does not operate when the Airplane mode or Wi-Fi tethering is ON.
- If Wi-Fi area information is changed etc., the terminal may not be connected automatically with this function. In that case, connect manually.

♦ Wi-Fi sleep policy

Set whether to disconnect Wi-Fi when the screen of the terminal turns off or while charging.

- From the Home screen, R→[Settings]→
 [Wireless & networks]→[Wi-Fi]
- 2 [CONFIGURE]→[Wi-Fi sleep policy]→Select the item

♦ Advanced Wi-Fi settings

- From the Home screen, R→[Settings]→
 [Wireless & networks]→[Wi-Fi]
- ¶
 [MENU] → [Advanced]
- 2 Set each item

Install certificates: Install certificates.
Wi-Fi Direct: Setting steps→P129
Easy Settings: Setting steps→P128
Multi-connection: Setting steps→P129
Wi-Fi Auto ON/OFF: Setting steps→P130

Wi-Fi optimization: Set whether to reduce the battery consumption when the Wi-Fi is On

auto-IP: Set whether to enable auto-IP function.

• Setting is not available when the Wi-Fi is On.

♦ Configuring Wi-Fi

- From the Home screen, ∰→[Settings]→
 [Wireless & networks]→[Wi-Fi]→
 [CONFIGURE]
- Set each item

Saved networks: Saved Wi-Fi networks are displayed.

Network notification: Set whether to notify when a Wi-Fi open network is available.

· Setting is not available when the Wi-Fi is Off.

Wi-Fi sleep policy : Setting steps→P131

MAC address: MAC address is displayed.

IP address: Display the IP address.

[3] Settings

Data usage

Check the data usage amount or make settings for the cellular

From the Home screen, ⊞→[Settings]→[Data usage]

9 Set each item

Usage: Mobile data usage for the period specified in "Billing cycle" is displayed.

Data saver: Restrict the background data communication of applications. To set applications not to restrict the data communication, tap [Unrestricted data access].

Cellular data: Setting steps→P132

Cellular data usage: Cellular data usage for the period specified in "Billing cycle" is displayed in a graph. Also, cellular data usage amount per application can be checked

Billing cycle: Setting steps→P132

Wi-Fi data usage: Wi-Fi data usage is displayed in a graph. Also, Wi-Fi data usage amount per application can be checked

Network restrictions: Set to restrict usage of the specified Wi-Fi network.

♦ Cellular data

Enable the Internet access via cellular network.

From the Home screen, ∰→[Settings]→[Data usage]→Turn [Cellular data] to ON

Setting a billing cycle

Set a billing cycle (measuring period), a data amount for warning, or an upper limit of data usage.

- From the Home screen, ⊞→[Settings]→[Data usage]→[Billing cycle]
- 9 Set each item

✓INFORMATION -----

- The displayed data amount is an estimation. To check the actual data usage amount, refer to "My docomo".
- If the data usage reaches to the specified upper limit, the notification screen indicating that the cellular data communication is paused appears. To resume the cellular data communication, tan (RFSIIMFI)

Airplane mode

Set Airplane mode to disable wireless function (call, packet communication, Wi-Fi, Miracast, tethering, Bluetooth function) of the terminal. However, Wi-Fi, Miracast and Bluetooth functions can be turned ON manually in Airplane mode.

- From the Home screen, R→[Settings]→
 [Wireless & networks]→[More]
- 7 Turn [Airplane mode] to ON

✓INFORMATION -----

 Alternatively, you can set/cancel it from the phone option menu which is displayed by pressing and holding

.

Tethering

Tethering is a function that allows external devices connected via USB cable, Wi-Fi, or Bluetooth communication to connect to the Internet by using a mobile device such as smartphone as a modem

- While tethering is enabled, for using sp-mode function other than Internet connection and mail service, authentication may not be available or sign in by d ACCOUNT may be required. When authentication is not available, disable tethering to use.
- When you connect to Internet using tethering, Wi-Fi device applications such as web browser or game may not work properly depending on the usage environment.

USB tethering

Connect the terminal to a PC using USB cable A to C 01 (optional) to use the terminal as a modem to access the laternat

- Connect the terminal and a PC with the USB cable A to C 01
- 2 Open the Notification panel→Tap the notification of USB option
- 3 [USB tethering]→Set [USB tethering] to ON

✓INFORMATION

 Operations for Windows7, Windows 8.1, and Windows 10 PCs are confirmed. Note that DOCOMO does not guarantee the operations of every PC.

♦ Wi-Fi tethering

You can use the terminal as a Wi-Fi access point to connect Wi-Fi devices to the Internet.

- Up to 10 Wi-Fi devices can be connected at the same time.
- Only 2.4GHz is supported for tethering.
- From the Home screen, ∰→[Settings]→
 [Wireless & networks]→[More]→[Tethering]

9 Set [Wi-Fi tethering] to ON

 If the screen for setting Wi-Fi access point is displayed, change the settings as needed and tap [SAVE].→P134

♦ Setting Wi-Fi tethering

Change the settings as required.

- By default, [F-01K_AP] is set for Network name, [WPA2 PSK AES] is set for Security, and a random value is set for [Password].
- From the Home screen, ∰→[Settings]→
 [Wireless & networks]→[More]→[Tethering]→
 [Wi-Fi access point]
- 2 Enter a network name→Select security→Enter a password→[SAVE]
 - Security can be set to [Open], [WEP64], [WEP128], [WPA2 PSK AES] or [WPA/WPA2 PSK].

♦ Easy settings for Wi-Fi tethering

Register Wi-Fi device supporting WPS.

- Set Wi-Fi tethering to ON in advance
 - From the Home screen, ∰→[Settings]→
 [Wireless & networks]→[More]→[Tethering]→
 [Easy settings for Wi-Fi tethering]
- Push button system]/[PIN entry system]→Set required items→On the registered screen, [OK]
 - For push button system, press a dedicated button on a Wi-Fi device. For PIN entry system, enter PIN code displayed on the Wi-Fi device and tap [OK].

♦ Bluetooth tethering

You can connect Bluetooth devices to the Internet

- Up to 4 Bluetooth devices can be connected at the same time.
- Pairing with Bluetooth devices is required in advance. → P171
 - From the Home screen, RH→[Settings]→
 [Wireless & networks]→[More]→[Tethering]
- 9 Set [Bluetooth tethering] to ON

✓INFORMATION -----

 For settings of the Bluetooth device, refer to the operation manual of the Bluetooth device.

VPN (Virtual Private Network)

VPN (Virtual Private Network) is a technology to connect to the information in a protected local network such as enterprises or universities from another network. To set up a VPN connection from the terminal, you need to retrieve the information related to security from your network administrator.

 Authentication may be required. Set pattern, security code, password, Fingerprint authentication, or Iris authentication for the security unlock preference in advance. → P150

♦ Adding VPN

- From the Home screen, ⊞→[Settings]→
 [Wireless & networks]→[More]→[VPN]
- ¶
 †
]
 →Set each item
 →[SAVE]

Connecting to VPN

- From the Home screen, ⊞→[Settings]→
 [Wireless & networks]→[More]→[VPN]
- Select a VPN to connect to
- 3 Enter necessary authentication information → [CONNECT]
 - When you are connected to the VPN, appears on the status bar.

♦ Disconnecting VPN

- From the Home screen, ⊞→[Settings]→
 [Wireless & networks]→[More]→[VPN]
- 9 Select a VPN to disconnect
- **?** [DISCONNECT]

Cellular networks

Disable data communication or add an access point.

♦ Stopping the packet communication

Some applications automatically perform packet communications. Packet communication is kept active unless you disconnect it or the time-out error occurs. Enable/disable packet communication as required

- From the Home screen, ⊞→[Settings]→
 [Wireless & networks]→[More]→[Cellular
 networks]
- 7 Turn [Data enabled] to OFF
- Confirm the content and [OK]
- ♦ Setting access point (APN)

The access point for accessing the Internet (sp-mode) is registered by default and you can add or change it if necessary. For details of sp-mode, refer to NTT DOCOMO website. https://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/service/spmode/ (in Japanese only)

For using mopera U, Business mopera Internet add the access point manually.

For details on mopera U, refer to mopera U website. https://www.mopera.net/ (In Japanese only)

 When the tethering function is enabled, setting access point is not available. → P133

Checking the access point in use

From the Home screen, ⊞→[Settings]→
[Wireless & networks]→[More]→[Cellular
networks]→[Access Point Names]

❖ Adding an access point

- Do not change the MCC/MNC to other than 440/10. The setting disappears from the screen.
- From the Home screen, ⊞→[Settings]→
 [Wireless & networks]→[More]→[Cellular
 networks]→[Access Point Names]
- **)** [+]
- 【 [Name]→Enter a network profile→[OK]
- 4 [APN]→Enter an access point name→[OK]
- 5 Enter other items required by network operator→[MENU]→[SAVE]

✓INFORMATION

 If you have changed MCC/MNC settings and they do not appear on the screen, reset to default or set the access point manually.

❖ Initializing an access point

By initializing an access point, the default state is restored

- From the Home screen, ⊞→[Settings]→
 [Wireless & networks]→[More]→[Cellular
 networks]→[Access Point Names]
- 7 [MENU]→[Reset to default]

✓INFORMATION -----

You can delete access point one by one by tapping an access
point on the APN list screen—On the access point editing
screen, tap [MENU]—[Delete APN].

Network settings reset

Reset the network settings.

- From the Home screen, ⊞→[Settings]→
 [Wireless & networks]→[More]→[Network
 settings reset]
- ¶ [RESET SETTINGS] → [RESET SETTINGS]
 - When you set security unlock preference requiring authentication, authentication is needed.

Display & Wallpaper

Set screen brightness or auto-rotate screen.

- From the Home screen, ∰→[Settings]→
 [Display/Sound/Apps]→[Display & Wallpaper]
- 9 Set each item

Brightness level : Setting stens→P138

Adaptive brightness: Adjust brightness automatically according to the ambient brightness based on the brightness level specified in [Brightness level].

Auto-rotate screen: Set whether to rotate the screen according to the terminal orientation.

 Even when you change the orientation of the terminal, the screen may not change depending on the screen displayed.

Wallpaper : Setting steps→P59
Screen timeout : Setting steps→P138
Screen saver : Setting steps→P138
Font size : Change the font size.

Display size: Enlarge/reduce the size of the displayed

icons etc.

Screen/Music Cast: Setting steps→P179
Customize screen: Setting steps→P56
Homescreen selector: Setting steps→P57
Touch and go display: Setting steps→P139

Touch and sleep: Set to turn off the screen backlight by tapping [Turn off screen] in the Notification panel. Blue light cut mode: Set whether to cut down blue light emitted from the screen

Video correction: Set whether to correct image quality of videos (1Seg, YouTube, etc.).

- For videos recorded by the camera or downloaded etc. and saved to the microSD card, the image quality is corrected when playing.
- The image quality of some videos may not be corrected. **Picture correction**: Set whether to correct the image quality of still images.

♦ Screen brightness

Set the screen brightness.

- From the Home screen, ∰→[Settings]→
 [Display/Sound/Apps]→[Display & Wallpaper]
 →[Brightness level]
- 9 Slide the slider to adjust the brightness
- **♦** Screen timeout

❖ Sleep

Set a time for turning off of screen backlight.

- From the Home screen, ∰→[Settings]→
 [Display/Sound/Apps]→[Display & Wallpaper]
 →[Screen timeout]
- ¶ [Sleep]→Select the time

❖ Keep lit when held

Set whether to keep the screen backlight on while the terminal is in motion, held in hand.

- From the Home screen, ⊞→[Settings]→
 [Display/Sound/Apps]→[Display & Wallpaper]
 →[Screen timeout]
- Mark/Unmark [Keep lit when held]

Screen saver

Set the screen saver which is displayed when the terminal goes into the sleep mode or while charging.

- From the Home screen, ⊞→[Settings]→
 [Display/Sound/Apps]→[Display & Wallpaper]
 →[Screen saver]
- 2 Tap the button at the upper right of the screen to turn [Screen saver] to On
- Select the application →

 Set each item
 - Tap [MENU]→[Start now] to activate the screen saver.

♦ Touch and go display

Set whether to cancel sleep mode by double-tapping the

- From the Home screen, ∰→[Settings]→
 [Display/Sound/Apps]→[Display & Wallpaper]
- Mark/Unmark [Touch and go display]

✓INFORMATION -----

- Even when Glove touch (→P163) is set to ON, Touch and go display function does not work with gloved hand.
- If "Touch and go display" is set to ON, it leads to quicker battery consumption than OFF status.

Notifications

Set the display method of notification of each application or function. Also, you can change the settings of the notification LED operations or notifications on the lock screen.

Setting the notifications

- From the Home screen, ∰→[Settings]→
 [Display/Sound/Apps]→[Notifications]
 - To display all applications, tap [MENU]→[Show system].
 - Tap [All apps] in the upper part of the screen to select the condition of displaying applications.
- 2 Select the application or function → Set each item

Block all: Set whether to not perform all notifications. Show silently: Set whether to notify without sound, vibration, screen display.

On the lock screen: Set whether to display the notification content on the lock screen.

 It is displayed when you set security unlock preference requiring authentication.

Override Do Not Disturb: Set whether to display the notifications when [Do not disturb] is set to [Priority only]. →P140

✓INFORMATION -----

 Available items vary depending on settings of the terminal or application/function.

Advanced settings of Notifications

From the Home screen, ⊞→[Settings]→
[Display/Sound/Apps]→[Notifications]→
[ADVANCED]

9 Set each item

Pulse notification light: Set whether to notify of new SMS, missed call, etc. with blinking of the Notification LED.

On the lock screen: Set whether to all notifications on the lock screen

Sound

Make settings for sound volume, phone ringtone, etc.

From the Home screen, ∰→[Settings]→
[Display/Sound/Apps]→[Sound]

Set each item

Media volume : Setting steps → P141
Alarm volume : Setting steps → P141
Ring volume : Setting steps → P141
Manner mode : Setting steps → P141

Turn off sound when flipped: Set whether to stop ringtone, alarm sound, etc. temporarily by flipping the terminal The sound may not turn off depending on application

When the vibrator is set, vibration turns off temporarily,

Vibrate on ring: Set whether to vibrate while ringtone is sounding.

- It cannot be set in Manner mode.
- Even if it is unmarked, the vibrator works when Ring volume is set to 0.

Sound at start charging: Set whether to notify by sound when starting charging.

Do not disturb: Set the notification type when [Do not disturb] is set to [Priority only]. Also, set a rule to activate the Do not disturb function automatically, or set not to notify with the screen display, blinking of the notification LED or the screen backlight when [Do not disturb] is set to [Total silence].

· It cannot be set in Manner mode.

You can set Do Not Disturb in the Panel switch (→P53).
 To use the function, display the Panel switch → → Touch and hold [Do not disturb] and drag to add to the namel switch

Phone ringtone: Set phone ringtone.

 When ringtone is set for phonebook entry, ringtone for the phonebook entry is given priority.

Default notification ringtone: Set the notification sound. **Default alarm ringtone**: Set the alarm sound.

Other sounds: Set Dial pad tones, Screen locking sounds, Touch sounds, or Vibrate on tap.

- Screen locking sounds are available when the security lock preference is set to other than [None]. →P150
- When Vibrate on tap is set, the terminal vibrates when tapping the icon on the navigation bar/dialing with "Phone" application/authenticating with the security unlock preference set to Pattern or Security code.

Screen/Music Cast : Setting steps→P179

Dolby Audio : Setting steps→P142

Volumes

You can adjust volume of media playing sound, alarm sound, ringtone.

- It cannot be set in Manner mode.
- From the Home screen, ⊞ [Settings] → [Display/Sound/Apps] → [Sound] → [Media volume]/[Alarm volume]/[Ring volume]
- Slide the slider to adjust the volume

✓INFORMATION

 When [Ring volume] is set to 0, vibration turns on. To turn off the vibration, set Manner mode (Silent) (→P142) etc.

◆ Manner mode

Set/cancel Manner mode.

- The type of Manner mode can be changed. →P142
- From the Home screen, H→[Settings] → [Display/Sound/Apps] → [Sound] → [Manner mode]
- 7 Turn [Manner] to ON
 - When Manner mode is set, the status icon appears on the status bar. The icon varies by Manner mode type.
 For each icon, see "Icons on the status bar".→P51

[14] Settings

✓INFORMATION -----

- You can also set/cancel Manner mode by the following steps.
 - Press the volume down key for 1 second or more
 - Press the Volume down key for 1 second of more

 Onen the Notification nanel→In the Panel switch [Manner]
 - Press and hold ⊚ until the phone options menu appears → [Manner mode]
 - Depending on the manner mode you set, tap [Manner mode (Silent)]/[Manner mode (Alarm)].
- Regardless of the manner mode setting, shutter sound, shooting start/end sound, auto focus lock sound, count down sound for self timer, screen shot sound while the camera is activated, capturing sound for Capture & Draw/Highlight & Copy while the camera is activated, and Find Me Ringtone when Bluetooth Low Energy are emitted.

Changing the type of Manner mode

From the Home screen, ⊞→[Settings]→
[Display/Sound/Apps]→[Sound]→[Manner
mode]→[Select manner mode]

9 Select the item

Manner mode: All sounds do not sound from the terminal speaker. And the vibration turns to ON.

Manner mode (Silent): In addition to mute sounds, turn off the vibration.

Manner mode (Alarm): Same operation as Manner mode except alarm volume and vibration go along to the alarm settings.

Dolby Audio

Set whether to use Dolby Audio for playing video or music.

From the Home screen, ⊞→[Settings]→ [Display/Sound/Apps]→[Sound]→[Dolby Audio]

 If the Dolby Audio screen appears, read the description and tap [OK].

9 Set required items

- Each time you tap . Dolby Audio switches ON/OFF. When switched on, 🔃 appears on the status bar.
- To listen to the difference of content when using Dolby Audio and not, tap [Play Demo].
- Tap [Movie]/[Music]/[Game]/[Voice]/[Custom 1]/
 [Custom 2] to switch the profile. Tap the selected profile again to show a profile settings screen.
- Tap on the profile settings screen to reset the selected profile to the default state.

✓INFORMATION

- Open the Notification panel → Tap the [Dolby Audio] panel switch to set ON/OFF for Dolby Audio.
- When Dolby Audio is set, other sound effect functions such as the equalizer are recommended not to use.
- For playing back high-resolution audio files, the effect of Dolby Audio is disabled.

Apps

Manage, delete, etc. installed applications.

- Displaying the permitted operations of the applications in the terminal
- From the Home screen, ⊞→[Settings]→
 [Display/Sound/Apps]→[Apps]
- **?** Select the application → [Permissions]
- Clearing app data or cache
- From the Home screen, ∰→[Settings]→
 [Display/Sound/Apps]→[Apps]
- 2 Select the application→[Storage]→[CLEAR DATA]/[CLEAR CACHE]
 - When [CLEAR DATA] is selected, tap [OK].

Deleting applications

- For applications obtained from Play Store, you are recommended to delete from the Google Play screen. →P92
- You cannot uninstall some pre-installed applications by default. And if pre-installed applications are uninstalled, you can reset the terminal to restore.
- From the Home screen, R → [Settings] → [Display/Sound/Apps] → [Apps]
- ¶ Select an application → [UNINSTALL] → [OK]
- ♦ Disabling an application
- Disabling application is available for some applications and services that cannot be uninstalled. Disabled applications are not displayed in the applications list screen or the Home screen, or cannot be launched either. However, they are not uninstalled.
 - From the Home screen, R→[Settings]→
 [Display/Sound/Apps]→[Apps]
- 2 Select an application→[DISABLE]/[ENABLE]

 When [DISABLE] is selected, tap [DISABLE].

✓INFORMATION

 When you disabled an application, some other applications linked to the disabled application may not be operated correctly. In such case, enable the application again to operate them correctly.

Storage

Check the usage status of the internal storage or microSD card

- From the Home screen, ⊞→[Settings]→
 [Display/Sound/Apps]→[Storage]
- 9 Set each item

Internal shared storage: Used amount and total amount of memory of the terminal, used amount per data are displayed.

SD card: Display the data list of the microSD card. Tap ≜ to unmount the microSD card (release recognition) to take out safely. To recognize a microSD card, [SD card] → [MOUNT].

- Erasing data (formatting) of microSD card
- Be aware that this operation will erase all data in the microSD card
- From the Home screen, ⊞→[Settings]→
 [Display/Sound/Apps]→[Storage]→[SD card]
- ¶ [MENU]→[Storage settings]→[Format]
- ¶ [ERASE & FORMAT]→[DONE]

Battery

Check the remaining amount of battery, etc.

- From the Home screen, ₩→[Settings]→
 [Battery]
- Set each item

Battery saver : Setting steps→P144

Full charge settings: Set whether to charge the battery to 100%. or 85% so as to save the battery life.

(Battery usage status): Display the battery level and the applications and functions which consume battery power from the last full charging.

♦ Battery saver

Enable/disable battery saver.

- When the battery saver is enabled, the status bar and navigation bar turn to orange, is displayed on the status bar.
- From the Home screen, ∰→[Settings]→
 [Battery]→[Battery saver]
- 2 Tap the button at the upper right of the screen to turn [Battery saver] to On
 - Tap [Turn on automatically]→[Never]/[at 5% battery]/
 [at 15% battery] to set the battery level to activate
 Battery saver.

✓INFORMATION -----

 When charging starts, the setting of Battery saver turns off automatically. To use Battery saver, turn it on again after charging.

Battery optimization

To reduce battery power for each application, disable applications when the terminal is not used or the applications are not used for several days.

- From the Home screen, ∰→[Settings]→

 [Battery]
- ¶ [MENU]→[Battery optimization]
- ¶ [Not optimized]→[All apps]
- 4 Select the application→[Optimize]/[Don't optimize]→[DONE]

Memory

Check the memory use of the applications installed to the terminal

- From the Home screen, ⊞→[Settings]→
 [Display/Sound/Apps]→[Memory]
 - Tap [Memory used by apps] to check how much memory is used for each application.

Users

Add a user to share the terminal with multiple users (the function with which users and a guest can use the terminal). Switch users or add a guest in the Panel switch (---P53). The information that is necessary for emergency or your profile information can be registered, too

From the Home screen, ₩→[Settings]→[Users]

9 Set each item

You (XXX): A user who currently uses the terminal. Tap

(User name): Registered user names are displayed.

 Set whether to permit a user to use the phone/SMS function and delete a user by tapping of the user while the owner is using.

Guest: When a guest uses the terminal, "Remove guest" is displayed and you can remove the applications or data that the guest used.

- Tap of the guest to set whether to allow the guest to use the phone.
- + Add user: Add an additional user.
- Every time add a user, the initial setting is required.
 Follow the onscreen instructions.

Add users: Set whether to add a guest or users from the notification panel on the lock screen when the security unlock preference that requiring authentication is set.

Emergency information: Register your blood type or other information which is useful for initial response when emergency, or emergency contact.

My Profile: Setting steps => P79

My physical profile: Set basic information to use for health care applications or widgets.

✓INFORMATION

- You can add up to 5 users including the owner and guests.
- When the user or guest uses the terminal, the displayed functions are different, or use of applications or functions are restricted.

Gestures

Set to allow the terminal to be operated by gestures.

From the Home screen, ∰→[Settings]→
[Display/Sound/Apps]→[Gestures]

9 Set each item

Jump to Camera: Set to activate Camera by pressing the power key twice. When it is set to ON, you can activate Camera from every screen.

Turn off sound when flipped: Set whether to stop the ringtone or alarm sound temporarily by turning off the terminal. The sound may not turn off depending on application.

 When the vibrator is set, vibration turns off temporarily, too.

docomo service/cloud

Make settings for docomo service or cloud.

From the Home screen, ∰→[Settings]→
[docomo service/cloud]

9 Set each item

d ACCOUNT setting: Set up d ACCOUNT setting used for docomo applications. You can also use your biological information (Fingerprint authentication/Iris

authentication) registered on the terminal to set up your d

docomo cloud : Make settings compatible with docomo

docomo apps management: Update the applications provided by DOCOMO, or set the periodical update, notifications etc.

Osusume hint: Set to use the recommended usage hint according to the operation or use condition.

AUTO-GPS : Set AUTO-GPS functions etc.

docomo location information : Set location information functions for imadoco search, imadoco kantan search and Keitai-Osagashi Service.

Send device error information: Set for sending error information to the server managed by DOCOMO.

Profile setting: Check/change the profile data used for various docomo services.

docomo service initial settings: Set docomo service settings all at once.

Switch USB debugging: Set to use the dedicated terminal at a sales outlet such as a docomo Shop.

Open source licenses: Show open source licenses.

✓INFORMATION

 You can disable some applications displayed in docomo service/cloud. Disabled applications may not be displayed in the list of docomo service. Also, if you newly download an application provided by DOCOMO, an item may be added in the list of docomo service/cloud.

Security

Make various settings for security.

- From the Home screen, ∰→[Settings]→
 [Security]
- Set each item

Security unlock preference: Setting steps→P150
Register fingerprint*1: Setting steps→P152
Fingerprint settings*1: Setting steps→P153

Register iris*1: Setting steps→P155 Iris settings*1: Setting steps→P155 Smart Lock: Setting steps→P155

Smart Lock: Setting steps→P155

Personal note: Setting steps→P156

Make passwords visible: Set whether to show entered

Make passwords visible: Set whether to show entered characters when entering security code/passwords.

Information security: The following items can be set.

Storage type : Setting steps→P156

Trusted credentials : Setting steps→P156

User credentials : Manage the user credentials saved to

the terminal.

Install from storage : Setting steps→P156 Clear credentials : Setting steps→P157

Hide recently used app : Setting steps→P157

Device administrators: Set whether to enable the device administrative function

Unknown sources: Setting steps→P157
Set up SIM card lock*2: Setting steps→P157

Trust agents : Manage trusted agents such as Smart Lock

etc.
Application pinning: Setting steps→P158

Apps with usage access: Manage applications which can access the app usage history in the terminal. Encrypt phone: Check that the system data saved in the internal storage is encrypted.

- For the terminal, settings of [Encrypt phone] cannot be changed.
- *1 Displayed items vary by registered condition.
- *2 Not displayed if a docomo nano UIM card is not inserted

♦ Security codes for the terminal

Some functions provided for convenient use of the terminal require the security code to use them. Besides the password for locking the terminal, the network security code necessary for the network services etc. are available. Make use of the terminal using an appropriate security code according to the purpose.

Notes on the security codes

- Avoid using a number that is easy to guess, such as "birth date", "part of your phone number", "street address number or room number", "1111", and "1234". Make sure to make a note of the security code you set lest you should forget it
- Be very careful not to let others know your security code. If your security code is known by anyone else, DOCOMO shall have no liability for any loss due to any unauthorized use of it.
- If you forget your security codes, you must bring your official identification (such as driver's license), the terminal, and docomo nano UIM card with you to the nearest docomo Shop. For details, contact the "General Inquiries" on the last page
- The PUK code is written on the subscription form (copy for customer) handed at the subscription in the docomo Shop. If you subscribed other than docomo Shop, you must bring your official identification (such as driver's license), the docomo nano UIM card with you to the nearest docomo Shop or contact the "General Inquiries" on the last page.

❖ Network security code

The network security code is a 4-digit number necessary for identification or using the docomo network services at reception of your request in docomo Shop, or at docomo Information Center or "お客様サポート (Customer support)". It can be set any number at the subscription and also changed later by yourself.

For details on network security code, refer to NTT DOCOMO website.

https://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/support/trouble/password/network/

PIN code

You can set up a security code called a PIN code for your docomo nano UIM card. The code is set to "0000" at subscription, which you can change by yourself. →P157 PIN code is a 4- to 8-digit security number (code) that must be entered for user authentication to prevent unauthorized use of docomo nano UIM card by a third party every time you install the docomo nano UIM card into the terminal or when the terminal is powered on. Entering the PIN code enables making/receiving calls and terminal operation.

- For using the docomo nano UIM card that you have used on another terminal by inserting to this terminal, use the set PIN code on the former terminal. If you did not change the setting, the code is "0000".
- If you enter a wrong PIN code 3 times consecutively, the PIN
 code is locked (PUK lock) and cannot be used anymore. In
 this case, unlock with "PUK". Unlock the PIN code before
 setting new PIN code. A new PIN code cannot be set until the
 lock is unlocked.

 If docomo nano UIM card is PIN locked or PUK locked, remove the docomo nano UIM card to display the Home screen so that communication via Wi-Fi connection is available

PUK code

The PUK code is an 8-digit number for canceling the locked PIN code. The PUK code cannot be changed by yourself.

- If you failed to enter PUK code 10 times consecutively, the docomo nano UIM card is locked. Please contact a docomo Shop.
- If docomo nano UIM card is PIN locked or PUK locked, remove the docomo nano UIM card to display the Home screen so that communication via Wi-Fi connection is available

♦ d ACCOUNT

d ACCOUNT is an ID/password that is necessary for using services provided by DOCOMO such as d POINT, dmarket, etc. on smartphones, tablets, PCs.

Google Account

Google account is a user name/password for using the Google services. By setting up your Google account to the terminal, you can use Gmail to send/receive emails or Google Play to download applications or games.

♦ Setting the security unlock preference

Set type of authentication operation to unlock the screen lock

From the Home screen, ∰→[Settings]→
[Security]→[Security unlock preference]

Authenticate

. To set for the first time, authentication is not required.

Select the item

None: Set to not display the lock screen.

Touch/Swipe: Set to unlock by touch/swipe.

Pattern: Set to unlock by a pattern connecting at least 4 points.

Security code: Set to unlock by a security code (4- to 16-digit number).

Password : Set to unlock by a password (which consists of

4 to 16 alphanumerics/symbols).

Fingerprint authentication: Setting steps→P151

Iris authentication : Setting steps → P153

 The displayed items differs depending on the setting of the security unlock preference.

Make pattern visible: Set whether to display the pattern when entering the unlock pattern.

Automatically lock: Set to activate the screen lock when the specified time is elapsed after the terminal goes into sleep mode when the security unlock preference that requires authentication is set. Power button instantly locks: Set whether to activate the screen lock instantly by pressing . Canceling the screen lock requires authentication.

Lock screen message: Enter a message to be displayed on the lock screen.

Slide to activate camera: Set whether to activate Camera by flicking left the camera icon at the bottom right of the lock screen.

✓INFORMATION

 While you use authentication storage, any of pattern, security code, password, fingerprint authentication, and iris authentication can be used for the security unlock preference.

♦ Locking the screen

To activate the screen lock, set the security unlock preference (→P150) and then press ☐ to let the terminal in sleep mode, or when the specified time set in [Automatically lock] is elapsed after the screen backlight turns off automatically.

 To unlock the screen lock, press to cancel sleep mode and then unlock operation according to the security unlock preference.

✓INFORMATION -----

 When the Google account is set, you can set a lock function by the password using a PC or tablet. If the terminal is lost, access to the following URL and log in with the Google account set for the terminal.

https://www.google.com/android/devicemanager

- Enter the new password in the terminal to unlock the screen lock.
- If you do not sign in to Google account, the operation is unavailable.

❖ When you forget unlock method

- When the security unlock preference that requires authentication is set and if you fail unlocking screen lock 5 times or more, the cancel operation cannot be performed temporarily. Retry after a certain period of time.
- If you forget the pattern/security code/password of the security unlock preference, contact a docomo shop.

✓INFORMATION -----

 You can make emergency calls from the lock screen without unlocking the screen lock.→P68

♦ Fingerprint authentication function

The terminal is equipped with the fingerprint authentication with which authenticate the security with registered fingerprint information.

Precautions when using fingerprint authentication function

- Since the function uses characteristics of fingerprints for authentication, the fingerprint authentication may not be available if your fingerprints are not sufficiently characteristic.
- Authentication performance (how successfully your fingerprint can be recognized when you touch the fingerprint sensor (a) properly) varies depending on the condition of your fingers. Fingerprint registration may fail or the authentication performance may decrease if your fingers have any of the conditions listed below. Note that you may be able to improve the authentication performance by wiping or washing your hands, using a different finger for authentication, or registering a larger area of your fingerprint according to your finger condition.
 - Wrinkled after taking a bath, wet, or sweat
 - Sweaty or greasy
 - Dirty with mud, oil, etc.
 - Rough or injured (cut or inflamed)
 - Extremely dry
 - Put on or lose weight so that the fingerprint has changed
 - Worn so much that fingerprint is unclear
 - Totally different in texture than when you registered your fingerprint

15] Settings

- When connecting the terminal to a device which requires grounding such as a desktop PC with a USB cable, be sure to perform a ground connection. While connecting without grounding, fingerprint authentication may fail. In that case, disconnect the terminal from the device and then perform fingerprint authentication.
- Fingerprint authentication technology does not guarantee complete identity authentication or verification. Note that DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for any damage caused by using the terminal by the third party or unavailability of this terminal.
- Even when the security unlock preference is set to fingerprint authentication, unlocking the screen lock with the security unlock preference used in combination every 72 hours or when activating the terminal is required. Do not forget the security unlock preference used in combination.

Precautions when using fingerprint sensor

- Although the surface of the fingerprint sensor is waterproof, water droplet or dirt on the fingerprint sensor or your finger causes a malfunction. Remove water droplet or dirt with soft cloth before using. Also, when your finger tip is wrinkled by moisture, a malfunction may be caused.
- . The following conditions may cause failure or damage:
 - Strike or give a hard shock
 - Scratch or poke with a pointed object
 - By pressing a hard object such as fingernail or a metal of strap against, the surface of the fingerprint sensor is scratched
 - The surface of the fingerprint sensor is scratched or dirty due to mud etc.
 - Cover with a sticker or paint with ink etc.

- The following conditions may make fingerprint authentication difficult or reduce the authentication performance. Occasionally clean the surface of the fingerprint sensor.
 - Dirt of dust, sebum, etc. attachment or condensation of moisture of sweat etc.
- When the following phenomenon occurs, clean the surface of the fingerprint sensor. The phenomenon may be improved.
 - Frequently registration of fingerprint or authentication fails.
- When cleaning the fingerprint sensor, remove dirt on the surface with a dray, soft cloth which does not generate static electricity easily. Even when dirt collects on the sensor while using for a long time period, do not use a pointed object to remove the dirt.
- Static electricity may cause a malfunction. Before place your finger on the fingerprint sensor, remove static electricity by touching metal etc. Be careful especially in dry season like winter.

*Registering fingerprint

- From the Home screen, ⊞→[Settings]→
 [Security]→[Register fingerprint]→[NEXT]
 - When you set security unlock preference requiring authentication, authenticate and then go to Step 3.
- 2 Select the unlock preference used in combination→Set following onscreen instructions

3 [NEXT]→Follow the onscreen instructions to register your iris→[DONE]

 To add another fingerprint, tap [Add fingerprint] and then follow the onscreen instruction to register fingerprint. Up to 5 fingerprints can be saved.

❖ Operating fingerprint authentication

- On the lock screen, touch the fingerprint sensor
 - If the authentication failed, perform the authentication operations with the security unlock preference used in combination (pattern/security code/password) registered at fingerprint registration.

Fingerprint settings

- | From the Home screen, ⊞→[Settings]→ [Security]→[Fingerprint settings]→ Authenticate
- 9 Set each item

(Fingerprint name): The registered fingerprint name is displayed. Tap to rename or delete fingerprint data.

Add fingerprint: Add a fingerprint registration.

Iris authentication function

The terminal is equipped with the iris authentication with which authenticate the security with registered iris information.

Precautions when using a camera for iris authentication and LED

- Do not place your eyes closer than 20 cm from the terminal while the iris authentication LED is lit.
- The camera for iris authentication is waterproof, however malfunction may occur if water or dirt adheres to the surface of the camera for iris authentication. When the iris registration or authentication fails often, wipe any water or dirt surface with a dry, soft and static-free cloth. The
- . The following conditions may cause failure or damage:
 - Strike or give a hard shock
 - Scratch or pick with a pointed object
 - Rub hard with a fingernail or hard object such as metal piece of strap and scratch the surface of the camera for iris authentication
 - Scratch or stain the surface of the camera for iris authentication or LED with soil etc.
 - Cover with a sticker or paint with ink etc.
- The following conditions may make iris authentication scanning difficult or reduce the authentication performance and the function may not be available. Clean occasionally the camera for iris authentication, LED, and peripheral of the proximity sensor (the front upper side of the terminal).
 - Dirt of dust, sebum, etc. attachment or condensation of moisture of sweat etc.

Precautions for registering iris

- If you wear glasses, remove them to register (you can wear glasses at authentication)
- Remove sunglasses, color contacts, or circle lenses to register
- Register at an indoor location with no direct sunlight.
- When registration takes time, open your eyes wide to increase the scanning precision.
- . Hold the terminal up to your eve level.
- Keep a distance of around 25 cm between the terminal and your eyes.
- Make sure there is no dirt or damage on the camera for iris authentication →P153
- The iris registration is available for one eye. However, both eyes registration is recommended for ensuring highly precise authentication.
- The iris registration can be added for the improvement of precision at authentication. However, avoid adding iris registrations of multiple persons because the authentication of yours may not be available. Also, the additional registration may not give the stronger effect because the precision improvement has a limitation.
- Iris authentication technology does not guarantee complete identity authentication or verification. Note that DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for any damage caused by use of this terminal or unavailability of this terminal.
- Even when the security unlock preference is set to Iris authentication, unlocking the screen lock with the security unlock preference used in combination every 72 hours and when activating the terminal is required. Do not forget the security unlock preference used in combination.

♦ Precautions for using iris authentication

- Authentication performance depends on the condition of use. The following conditions may make iris authentication difficult or reduce the authentication performance.
 - Wearing sunglasses, color contacts, or circle lenses
 - Eyes are swollen severely or your bangs are in your eyes, and iris is hidden
 - Eyes or the terminal gets direct sunlight or reflecting light Below water
 - The terminal or your body is shaking strongly
- Putting the terminal on an angle or turning it over
- Dirt or damage is on the camera for iris authentication or LED→P153
- When authentication takes time, open your eyes wide to increase the authentication precision.
- Keep a distance of from 20 to 30 cm between the terminal and your eyes.
- Iris may not be detected when light reflects on the lenses of glasses. In such case, reduce the reflection of the light by inclining your face, etc.
- Note that the authentication may be performed when another person holds the terminal and the terminal is faced toward you.

❖ Registering iris

From the Home screen, ∰→[Settings]→ [Security]→[Register iris]

- When you set security unlock preference requiring authentication, authenticate, tap [START REGISTRATION], and then go to Step 3.
- 2 [START REGISTRATION]→Select the unlock preference used in combination→Set following onscreen instructions
 - To register with one eye, register from [HERE FOR ONE-FYE REGISTRATION]
- 3 Follow the onscreen instructions to register your iris → [DONE]

♦ Operating iris authentication

- On the lock screen, perform the operations of iris authentication
 - If the authentication failed, perform the authentication operations with the security unlock preference used in combination (pattern/security code/password) registered at iris registration.

♦ Iris authentication setting

From the Home screen, R→[Settings]→
[Security]→[Iris settings]

9 Set required items

Improving accuracy of iris authentication: Register the additional iris for improving the accuracy of iris authentication

Delete iris data : Delete iris data

Display iris finder: Set whether to display the finder on the iris authentication screen

Tips for iris authentication: Display the tips at iris authentication.

Site to master iris: Display the websites describing how to use the iris authentication.

♦ Smart Lock

Set the method to unlock the screen lock when connecting from an external device or by face recognition.

- Set a security unlock preference which requires authentication in advance →P150
- When the iris authentication is set for security unlock preference, face recognition is not available.
- From the Home screen, ∰→[Settings]→
 [Security]→[Smart Lock]→Authenticate

9 Set each item

Personal note

Register and manage authentication information such as your ID (account), password, etc. You can enter by quoting the registered information → P42

- Set a security unlock preference which requires authentication in advance. →P150
- To quote the registered information, use Super ATOK ULTIAS.
- . Up to 100 items can be saved.
- From the Home screen, R→[Settings]→
 [Security]→[Personal note]→Authenticate
- 2 [REGISTER]→Set each item→[DONE]

 Editing: Tap the title→Edit each item→[DONE]

 Deleting: Touch and hold the title→Drag it to in at the bottom of the screen→IOKI

Sorting: Touch and hold the title→Drag it to a

Backing up/Restoring : [MENU]→[Backup/Restore]→
Select the item→Follow the onscreen instruction
Deleting all items : [MENU]→[Delete all]→[OK]

♦ Managing authentication information

You can display credential authentication information or certificates or install authentication information for accessing VPNs etc. or other certificates

Displaying authentication information storage type

- From the Home screen, ∰→[Settings]→
 [Security]→[Information security]
- Check [Storage type]
- Displaying trusted credentials or certificates
- From the Home screen, ⊞→[Settings]→ [Security]→[Information security]→[Trusted credentials]

✓INFORMATION

- To delete installed certificates, delete from [Clear credentials].
- Installing authentication information or certificate

You can install authentication information or certificates

- From the Home screen, ₩→[Settings]→ [Security]→[Information security]→[Install from storage]
- Select the authentication information/ certificate you want to install
- 3 If necessary, enter the password→[OK]

4 Enter the name of the authentication information/certificate→[OK]

Clearing credentials

Clear all authentication information, certificates or VPN settings from the authentication storage.

- From the Home screen, ⊞→[Settings]→
 [Security]→[Information security]
- **?** [Clear credentials] → [OK]
- Showing/Hiding recently used applications

Set whether to show the recently used applications when tapping (History).

- From the Home screen, ∰→[Settings]→
 [Security]→[Information security]
- Mark/Unmark [Hide recently used app]
- Permitting to install unknown sources applications

Permit to install applications obtained from sites other than Play Store, mails, etc.

- To protect the terminal and personal data, download applications only from trusted sources such as Play Store etc.
- From the Home screen, ⊞→[Settings]→
 [Security]→[Information security]

Mark [Unknown sources]→Confirm precautions and [OK]

Setting PIN code

Set up SIM card lock

Set to require entry of PIN code when powered on.

- From the Home screen, ∰→[Settings]→
 [Security]→[Information security]→[Set up
 SIM card lock]
- ¶ [Lock SIM card] → Enter a PIN code → [OK]

✓INFORMATION -----

- · When entering the PIN code for the first time, enter "0000".
- · To cancel the setting, set [Lock SIM card] to OFF in Step 2.

♦ Changing PIN code

Set the PIN code (set [Lock SIM card] to ON) in advance.

- From the Home screen, ∰→[Settings]→ [Security]→[Information security]→[Set up SIM card lock]
- Change SIM PIN]
- 2 Enter the current PIN code→[OK]
- ▲ Enter a new PIN code → [OK]
- Enter the new PIN code again→[OK]

❖ Entering PIN code

Turn on the power→on the PIN code entry screen, enter the PIN code →■

Unlocking PUK

When PIN code is locked (PUK lock), unlock the lock and then set a new PIN code

- On the code entry screen, enter the PUK code→
- 7 Enter a new PIN code →
- 3 Enter the new PIN code again→

Application pinning

Set whether to fix the currently running application to prevent other applications from using.

- From the Home screen, ⊞→[Settings]→
 [Security]→[Information security]→
 [Application pinning]
- 2 Tap the button in the upper right of the screen to set [Application pinning] to On
- 3 Activate the application to be fixed
- 4 (History) → of the application to be fixed → [GOT IT]
 - To cancel pinning of application, touch and hold (Back).

✓INFORMATION -----

 You can set to require authentication when unpinning application by setting [Security authentication for unpinning] to On in Step 2.

Accounts

Add or delete accounts.

- Adding an account
- From the Home screen, ∰→[Settings]→
 [Location/Accounts]→[Accounts]
- 2 [Add account]→Select an account type→ Follow the onscreen instructions

Setting account : Select an account type→Select an account→Set each item

✓INFORMATION -----

- Multiple Google accounts can be added on the terminal.
- Tapping free area other than displayed screen may cancel operation.
- [MENU]

 Marking [Auto-sync data] synchronizes the terminal with online service information such as Google.

- Deleting an account
- From the Home screen, ⊞→[Settings]→
 [Location/Accounts]→[Accounts]
- 2 Select an account type → Select an account → [MENU] → [Remove account] → [REMOVE ACCOUNT]

✓INFORMATION

- . You cannot remove the docomo account.
- Starting synchronization manually
- From the Home screen, P→[Settings]→
 [Location/Accounts]→[Accounts]
- 2 Select an account type → Select an account → [MENU] → [Sync now]
- To cancel sync
- While sync, [MENU]→[Cancel sync]

Google

Check, change, or delete information or settings related to your Google account and the services.

- For details on Google settings, on the Google setting screen,
 →[Help & feedback] to see Help.
- From the Home screen, ₩→[Settings]→
 [Google]

Google setting screen is displayed.

Set each item

Languages & input

Change the language used for the terminal, font or character

From the Home screen, R→[Settings]→
[Languages & input]

9 Set each item

Languages: Setting steps→P160

Spell check: Set whether to run the spell checker.

Personal dictionary : Add words for using a spell checker

application etc.

font

Font settings : Setting steps→P160
Font size : Change the font size

Clear Font : Set whether to display with large and clear

 Mark this item to change the settings of font, font size and display size collectively.

Current Keyboard : Setting steps→P44
Virtual keyboard : Setting steps→P44, P161

 Tap [Manage keyboards] to set the keyboard displayed in the keyboard options screen.

Physical keyboard: Set the option when a keyboard is connected to the terminal →P47

Text-to-speech output: Make settings for Text-to-speech output.

Pointer speed: Set pointer speed when a mouse or trackpad is used.

Switching to English display

Change the language to be used to English.

- | From the Home screen, 図→[設定 (Settings)]→[言語と入力 (Languages & input)]→[言語 (Languages)]
- 2 Drag

 of [English (United States)] to the top layer (position of [1])

✓INFORMATION

- . Some applications are not displayed in English.
- To change to the Japanese display, operate as follows.
 From the Home screen. ☐ Settings ☐ [Languages & input]
 - →[Languages]→Drag

 of [日本語(日本)(Japanese (Japan))] to the top layer (position of [1])

♦ Font settings

Change display font type.

- From the Home screen, ∰→[Settings]→
 [Languages & input]→[Font settings]
- 9 Select a font→[OK]

✓INFORMATION

- Depending on screen, turning the power off and on reflects font settings.
- The font settings may not be reflected or set font may not be displayed correctly on some applications or websites.

♦ Setting Voice Search

Set Google Voice Search functions.

From the Home screen, ⊞→[Settings]→
[Languages & input]→[Virtual keyboard]→
[Google voice typing]

9 Set each item

Languages: Set language for Google voice search.

"Ok Google" detection: Set up this option so you can start a voice search by saving "Ok Google".

Hands-free: Set whether to permit the request from a hands-free device when the terminal is locked

Speech output: Set up speech output

Offline speech recognition: Download language additionally and set to use the speech recognition offline. Block offensive words: Set whether to show improper search results.

Bluetooth headset: Set whether to perform voice search using Bluetooth devices.

Backup & reset

Back up the data of the terminal or reset the terminal.

From the Home screen, H→[Settings]→
[Location/Accounts]→[Backup & reset]

Set each item

Back up my data: Set whether to back up settings of applications or data to the Google server

Backup account: Set an account backed up to the Google server.

Automatic restore: Set whether to restore backed up settings or data when reinstalling an application.

Factory data reset : Setting steps→P161

Safe data storage: Back up the various data, the terminal settings, etc. in the terminal to a microSD card or restore them to the terminal

Resetting the terminal

All installed applications and saved data to the terminal, for the most part, are deleted when you reset the terminal.

- For erasing data in microSD card, see "Erasing data in microSD card (Format)".

 P144
- From the Home screen, ∰→[Settings]→
 [Location/Accounts]→[Backup & reset]
- ¶ [Factory data reset] → [RESET PHONE]
 - When you set security unlock preference requiring authentication, authentication is needed.

? [ERASE EVERYTHING]

A short while after the reset is completed, the terminal will be restarted

Do not turn off the terminal while resetting tablet

✓INFORMATION

 If the touch operations cannot be performed correctly after resetting, turn off and on the power.

Useful tools

Set Slide-in function, Pedometer, etc.

From the Home screen, ∰→[Settings]→[Useful tools]

Set each item

Voice call : Setting steps→P74

Exlider settings : Setting steps→P163

Personal assist : Setting steps→P163

Detect a USB device : Detect a USB device when the USB

device is connected to the terminal.

Glove touch: Setting steps→P163

Slide-in function: Setting steps→P164

Navigation bar: Setting steps→P164

Pedometer: Setting steps→P164

Earphone Launcher: Set the terminal to display a launcher when an earphone is connected so that you can launch an application from there.

 Applications displayed in the launcher can be set in [Launcher setting].

Safe data storage: Back up the various data, the terminal settings, etc. in the terminal to a microSD card or restore them to the terminal

Exlider settings

Swipe the power key to scroll or zoom the screen.

- From the Home screen, ₹→[Settings]→[Useful tools]→[Exlider settings]
- 9 Set [Exlider operation] to ON
- Set each item
 - Tap [Function description] to check how to use Exlider.

♦ Personal assist

Personal assist learns how you usually use the terminal, based on information such as the location, time, and day of the week. You can set up this feature to display a list of candidate applications for your convenience.

- Turn Personal assist on to allow it to start learning how you usually use the terminal. When the learning process is complete, Personal assist is displayed on the Home screen. Note that it may take several days for the learning process to be completed.
- From the Home screen, ∰→[Settings]→[Useful tools]→[Personal assist]
- 9 Set [Personal assist] to ON
 - Tap [Function description] to see detailed information about Personal assist and instructions for using it.
- 3 Operate following onscreen instructions → [START USING]

✓INFORMATION -----

- Configure the following settings to use Personal assist more comfortably. These settings will help identify your current location with higher accuracy, thus providing more accurate assistance. Also, you can use Wi-Fi to identify even an indoor location where the GPS function does not work.
 - Set [Location] to On and set [Mode] to [High accuracy]→ P118
- Set [Wi-Fi] to ON→P127
- From the Home screen, P→Settings → [Location/ Accounts] → [Location] → [MENU] → [Scanning] → Set [Wi-Fiscanning] to ON

♦ Glove touch

Set whether to improve the sensitivity of the touch panel so you can use touch gestures on the terminal with gloves on.

- From the Home screen, ⊞→[Settings]→[Useful tools]
- Mark/Unmark [Glove touch]

✓INFORMATION

- Depending on the material of gloves, touch operation may be difficult.
- If the touch operation is difficult, tilt your fingers to bring the pads of the fingers into contact with the touch panel when operating the terminal.
- If [Glove touch] is marked and you use touch operation without wearing gloves, the terminal may perform operations unintentionally.

 Note that unintended operation may be executed if you put the terminal in a pocket or a bag with the backlight ON when [Glove touch] is marked. Let the terminal go to sleep mode when putting the terminal in a pocket etc.

♦ Slide-in function

Configure settings so that you can slide your finger from the edge of the screen to bring up the launcher, from which you can launch applications, or to capture a screen shot, or so that you can slide your finger along lines of text to copy them.

- From the Home screen, ⊞→[Settings]→[Useful tools]→[Slide-in function]
- 9 Set [Slide-in function] to ON
- 2 Set each item
 - Tap [Function Description] to show how to use Slide-in launcher, Capture & Draw/Highlight & Copy.

✓INFORMATION -----

 When applications registered to the launcher are updated, the registration may be canceled.

♦ Navigation bar

Set icons (→P49) on Navigation bar

- From the Home screen, ∰→[Settings]→[Useful tools]→[Navigation bar]
- 2 [Select icon]→[OFF]/[Easy Zoom]/[Slide display]
- [Icon location]→Select an item

Pedometer

Set whether to start counting your steps.

- When [Pedometer use] is set to ON, you can use applications or widgets that use steps data.
- To obtain more precisely step information, set your height and weight in [My physical profile] of [Users]. →P146
- From the Home screen, ⊞→[Settings]→[Useful tools]→[Pedometer]
- 9 Set [Pedometer use] to ON

Deleting all logs : [To remove history]→[EXECUTION]→
[YES]

· All logs are deleted including steps being counted.

❖ Precautions on using Pedometer

- To count steps accurately, it is recommended that you wear the pedometer correctly (place it in a carrying case and attach the case to the waist belt etc. or when putting the terminal in a bag, put it in a pocket or between partitions), and walk at the speed of 100 - 120 steps per minute.
- Even when you wear Pedometer correctly, if your walking or movement does not reach to the terminal like when moving part of body such as only hands or feet, your steps amount may not be counted accurately.
- Steps may not be counted accurately in the following cases.
 - When the terminal moves randomly as the bag you put the terminal in hits your legs or hip, or when hanging the terminal down from your hip or bag
 - When shuffling, walking randomly wearing sandals, geta (wooden clogs) or Japanese sandals, or when your walking pace was slowed down because of walking in the crowded area etc.
 - When you had a lot of up-and-down motions, shaking or horizontal movements such as repeating standing and sitting, climbing up and down stairs or steep slope, or getting on a vehicle (bicycle, car. train, bus. etc.)
 - When you jogged or did some sports other than walking, or walked extremely slowly
- When shaking or swinging the terminal, counting steps may not be performed accurately.
- When functions available by users and guests are used, the Pedometer is treated as the same.

✓INFORMATION -----

- At the beginning of walking, the figure is not changed because the Pedometer is judging to prevent miscount whether you started walking. As a guide, when you walked for about 4 seconds, the steps to there are added at a time.
- Counted number of steps is saved approximately every 60 minutes. However, the steps that are not counted on the day will be corrected on the next day.
- When pedometer count is not updated, redisplay the screen to update.
- By malfunction, repair or other treatments of the terminal, the information of steps may be lost. Note that, even if the information of steps are lost, DOCOMO assumes no responsibility for the loss of any data.

Date & time

Set for date and time.

- To set the date & time and the time zone manually, unmark
 [Automatic date & time]/[Automatic time zone].
- From the Home screen, R→[Settings]→
 [System]→[Date & time]

Set each item

Automatic date & time: Set whether to correct date and time automatically by using network-provided information.

Automatic time zone: Set whether to correct time zone automatically by using network-provided information.

Set date: Set date manually.
Set time: Set time manually.

Select time zone : Set time zone manually

Use 24-hour format: Set whether to use 24-hour format.

Accessibility

Set for assistance of user operations.

- From the Home screen, H→[Settings]→
 [System]→[Accessibility]
- Set each item

Exlider service: Set whether to use Exlider service which allows you to scroll or zoom the screen by swiping the power key.

Osusume hint: Set to use the hints according to your operations or usage condition.

Captions: Set whether to display captions or set the language of captions or font size

Magnification gesture: Set whether to zoom in/out by tapping the screen 3 times.

Font size : Change the font size.

Display size: Enlarge/reduce the size of icons etc. displayed in the screen.

Click after pointer stops moving: Set whether to perform click operation when the pointer is stopped when using a mouse

High contrast text: Set whether to make the text contrast strong.

Speak passwords: Set whether to output password by voice sound.

Large mouse pointer: Set whether to enlarge the pointer when using a mouse.

Mono audio: Set whether to play monaural sound.

Accessibility shortcut: Set whether to activate

Accessibility function by shortcut operation.

Text-to-speech output: Set up text-to-speech output.
Touch & hold delay: Set time to detect a touch and hold.
Color inversion: Set whether to invert the color.
Color correction function

About phone

Display various information about the terminal.

From the Home screen, ∰→[Settings]→
[System]→[About phone]

Confirm each item

Software Undate : Setting sten→P196

Status: Displays battery status and performance, the SIM card information (network name or phone number etc.), IMFI (individual serial number) address etc.

Legal information: Check Open source license, the Terms of use of Google, etc.

Auth: Check information of certificate or compliant marks

Model/Android version/Android security patch level/ Baseband version/Kernel version/Build number: Display each version or number.

File management

Storage (Internal storage)

Folders in the internal storage (/storage/emulated/0/) and data saved in each folder by default are as follows.

Alarms	Alarm sound
Android	Temporary files of installed applications
arrows movie	Pre-installed videos by default
DCIM	Still images/videos taken with the camera
Download	Files downloaded by browser etc.
Movies	Videos (except those taken with the camera)
Music	Music files
Notifications	Notification sound
Pictures	Still images (except those taken with the camera)
Podcasts	Files from Podcast (e.g. programs delivered via the Internet)
Premium Photo	Pre-installed still images by default
Ringtones	Phone ringtone

microSD card (External storage)

Save the data of the terminal to a microSD card or import the data of a microSD card to the terminal.

For microSD cards, refer to "microSD card" →P33.

File operations

You can manage data saved in the internal storage and microSD card (rename/delete/copy/move etc. folders and files).

- From the Home screen, ⊞→[File Manager]
- 7 Touch and hold a folder/file
 - · Tap a file to display/play.
 - ■ To switch the storage, tap [F-01K]/[SD card].
 - To open the multiple windows, tap [New window].
 - To create a new folder, tap [New folder].
- ? Perform the operation
 - Copying: : →[Copy to...]→Select a destination to copy to →[PASTE]
 - Moving : ; →[Move to...]→Select a destination to move to→[MOVE]
 - Renaming: : →[Rename] → Enter a name →[OK]
 - Deleting:

 →[OK]
 - Sharing: < → Operate following the onscreen instructions.

Data communication

Bluetooth® communication

Using Bluetooth function

You can connect the terminal and a Bluetooth device to perform wireless communication or play voice sound or music.

- Note that using Bluetooth connection makes battery consumption faster.
- Wireless communication is not guaranteed for all Bluetooth devices

✓INFORMATION -----

- For information on compatible Bluetooth version, profiles, etc., see "Main specifications".→P201
- For operations of the Bluetooth device, refer to the operation manual of your Bluetooth device.

Handling precautions when using Bluetooth function

- Connect with another Bluetooth device keeping the line-ofsight distance to 10 m or shorter. Distance available for connection may be shorter if obstacles exist between the terminal and the Bluetooth device or depending on surrounding (wall furniture, etc.)
- Place a Bluetooth device as far as possible from other electric appliances, audio visual devices and office appliances. A microwave oven strongly affects the connection when it is operated. Connection may not be established correctly when other devices are powered on, or the connection may cause noises on TV or radio or reception difficulty.
- Under strong ambient signals, connection may not be established.
- Radio waves emitted by a Bluetooth device may affect electronic medical equipment. Turn off the terminal and other Bluetooth devices in a train, aircraft or hospital, near an automatic door or fire alarm, and at a place where flammable gases could be generated such as a gas station.

❖ Radio wave interference with wireless I AN

Because a Bluetooth device and wireless LAN (IEEE802.11b/g/ n) use the same frequency band (2.4 GHz), if the device is used near a device with wireless LAN capability, radio wave interference may occur, and communication speed may be reduced, noise may occur, or connection may not be established. In this case, turn the wireless LAN device power off, or move the terminal and the Bluetooth device away at least 10 m from the wireless LAN device.

♠ Bluetooth ON/OFF

Set Bluetooth to ON to use Bluetooth function. When you do not use Bluetooth, set it to OFF in order to cut the battery

- When activated.
 appears on the status bar.
- Turning the power OFF does not change Bluetooth ON/OFF setting
- From the Home screen, ⊞→[Settings]→
 [Wireless & networks]→[Bluetooth]
- 2 Tap the button at the upper right of the screen to set ON/OFF

Connecting with registered Bluetooth devices

Connect Bluetooth device. You can talk or play back sounds or music using a Bluetooth device, or exchange data to or from a Bluetooth device. And you can enter characters on the terminal with Bluetooth compatible keyboard.

- Set a Bluetooth device to be detectable in advance
- When connected, was appears on the status bar.
- For profile HFP/HSP/A2DP, 1 Bluetooth device can be connected simultaneously.
 Bluetooth devices with
- Bluetooth devices with

 Qualcomm® aptX™ audio
 and aptX HD audio enables to play music using aptX and
 aptX HD audio codec.
- From the Home screen, ∰→[Settings]→
 [Wireless & networks]→[Bluetooth]
- 2 Tap the button at the upper right of the screen to turn [Bluetooth] to ON
 - When a Bluetooth device to connect is not displayed, tap [MENU]→[Refresh].
- 3 Tap a detected Bluetooth device→Enter a passcode (PIN) as required and [OK]/[PAIR]
- When connection is requested from another Bluetooth device

If a Bluetooth pair setting request screen appears, enter a pass code (PIN) if necessary and tap [OK]/[PAIR].

Sending or receiving data to or from Bluetooth device

You can send data such as Album-Scene (→P113) and contacts or receive data from a Bluetooth device.

 Set a Bluetooth device to be connected or to be detectable in advance.

<Example> Sending files in Album-Scene

- 1 Open Album-Scene and tap an image
- **9** H→[Send]→[Bluetooth]→[OK]
 - When the image size selecting screen appears, tap [Original size]/[Shrink image]→[OK].
- 3 Tap a Bluetooth device Open the Notification panel to check if transmission is completed.
- <Example> Receiving files from a Bluetooth device
- 1 Send files from a Bluetooth device
- 2 After the file arrival is notified, open the Notification panel→[Bluetooth Share: Incoming file]→[ACCEPT]
 - To check the received files, open the Notification panel and tap the notification of "Bluetooth Share: Received files", or operate from the Home screen, ☐ + [Settings]
 - [Wireless & networks] → [Bluetooth] → [MENU] → [Show received files].

◆ Canceling connection with a Bluetooth device

When a Bluetooth device such as an earphone microphone or keyboard is connected, cancel it by the following operation.

- From the Home screen, ∰→[Settings]→
 [Wireless & networks]→[Bluetooth]
- 7 Tap the connected Bluetooth device →[OK]
- **♦** Unpairing from Bluetooth device
- From the Home screen, ⊞→[Settings]→
 [Wireless & networks]→[Bluetooth]
- 2 Tap the button at the upper right of the screen to turn [Bluetooth] to ON→☆ of the Bluetooth device→[FORGET]
- ♦ Renaming a Bluetooth device
- From the Home screen, ⊞→[Settings]→
 [Wireless & networks]→[Bluetooth]
- 2 Tap the button at the upper right of the screen to turn [Bluetooth] to ON→♥ of the Bluetooth device→Enter a device name→[OK]

♦ Bluetooth Low Energy setting

Set notification for Bluetooth Low Energy device

From the Home screen, ∰→[Settings]→
[Wireless & networks]→[Bluetooth]→[MENU]
→[Bluetooth Low Energy]

9 Set required items

Alert Notification: Set whether to notify to compatible devices of incoming calls, new email, etc.

Alert Notification Detail Setting: When Alert Notification is ON, select items to notify (incoming call, docomo mail, Email, Gmail, SMS, alarm, calendar).

Find Me Ringtone: Set whether to emit ringtone when receiving notification from compatible devices.

Find Me Ringtone Settings: When Find Me Ringtone is ON, select from the notification ringtone list.

Proximity: Set notification level for compatible devices when connection is canceled.

Connecting compatible device again is needed for

reflecting this setting.

Time: Set whether to synchronize time with a Time-

Time: Set whether to synchronize time with a Time-compatible device.

 Regardless of the setting, time on the terminal is synchronized with paired Time-compatible device.
 When the setting is on, time on a Time-compatible device is synchronized with the terminal even if the time on the terminal changes after pairing is complete.

✓INFORMATION -----

 Find Me Ringtone in Bluetooth Low Energy setting sounds regardless of the Manner mode and volume settings.

NFC communication

NFC is an abbreviation for Near Field Communication and a short range wireless communication method of international standard defined by ISO (International Organization for Standardization). You can use a contactless IC card function, Reader/Writer function, P2P function, etc.

You can send/receive data to/from another NFC compatible device using NFC function.

 For notes when holding over the other device, refer to "Notes when holding over the other device".→P95

Android Beam

Transfer data between the terminal and a Reader/Writer, P2P equipped terminal.

- equipped terminal.
 To use Android Beam, set to allow data transfer beforehand.
- When "Lock NFC/Osaifu-Keitai" is activated, Android Beam cannot be used.
 Android Beam cannot be used on some applications.
- Available data varies by applications.
- Data transfer is not guaranteed for all Reader/Writer, P2P equipped terminals.
- From the Home screen, ⊞→[Settings]→
 [Wireless & networks]→[NFC/Osaifu-Keitai
 Settings]
 - When a password setting screen appears, set a password.
 - If [Lock NFC/Osaifu-Keitai] is marked, unmark the checkbox.

- Mark [Reader/Writer, P2P]
- 3 [Android Beam]→Tap the button at the upper right of the screen to turn [Android Beam] ON
- Transferring content displayed on the screen

You can transfer content shown on the screen such as websites, only by holding \Im mark over each other's terminal.

- Activate each other's Android Beam function
- 2 Show website, content, etc. to transfer on the
- ? Hold 2 mark over each other's terminal
 - When the terminal detects a compatible device, notification sounds. The screen content on the sender's terminal is zoomed out and "Tap to beam" appears.
 - When the operation is being performed by the sender using the shared menu, hold marks over each other to start transferring automatically.
- ▲ Tap the screen content to transfer

The content shown on the sender's terminal is transferred to the receiver's terminal.

External device connection

Connecting with a PC

Operating data on the terminal from a PC

Connect the terminal and a PC using USB cable A to C 01 (optional) to operate the data in the internal storage or microSD card of the terminal

- The PCs of Windows 7, Windows 8.1 and Windows 10 are supported. Note that DOCOMO does not guarantee the operations of every PC.
- Insert the Type-C plug of the USB cable A to C 01 into the USB Type-C jack of the terminal and insert the USB plug of the USB cable A to C 01 into a USB connector of a PC
- 2 Open the Notification panel→Tap the notification of USB option
- 3 Select the option of USB connection

Charge this device: Just charge the terminal Supply power: Supply power to other device which is connected to the terminal.

Transfer files: Transfer music, video, etc. using a file manager software which supports MTP.

Transfer photos (PTP): Transfer still images or videos to a PC etc. which does not support MTP.

Use device as MIDI: Use the terminal for MIDI input.

Perform target operations

✓INFORMATION

- When a microSD card is not mounted on the terminal, the microSD card cannot be recognized by a PC. In such case, from the Home screen, ☐ + [Settings] → [Display/Sound/Apps] → [Storage] → [SD card] → [MOUNT] and then connect the terminal to a PC.
- When [Photo transfer (PTP)] is selected, data on the internal storage in the terminal can be operated from the PC only when microSD card is removed.

Connecting with a printer

Connecting with a printer using cloud print

Using the Google Cloud Print™ function, you can connect the terminal with a printer which you usually use and print a images displayed in the terminal or web pages in the browser. Also, you can connect a cloud compatible printer as a printer that is related to a Google Cloud Print account via Internet connection without a PC.

- To use Google Cloud Print, you need to set up a Google account on the terminal.
- Items or displays may vary depending on the version of the application.

- For details on Google Cloud Print, refer to Help of Google Cloud Print on the Google website.
- From the Home screen, R→[Settings]→
 [System]→[Printing]→[Cloud Print]
- 2 Tap the button at the upper right of the screen to turn [Cloud Print] to On
 - If print connection settings are made in your Google account beforehand, a cloud print menu appears and the menu includes a printer that can be connected when you print
 - If you do not set your Google account, in Cloud Print screen, [MENU]→[Settings]→[Add account] and set a Google account.
 - If the connection setup of the daily used printer for the PC printing or the cloud compatible printer are not made, in Cloud Print screen, tap [MENU]→[Add printer] to set up the connection

Print

<Example> Printing a web page displayed with "Chrome" application

While a web page is displayed, slide down the screen to display the top part of the web page

→ : →[Share...]→[Print]

Print setting screen for the connected printer appears.

- 9 Set required items
 - Set printer, paper size, etc.
- Start printing

✓INFORMATION

 Printable data varies depending on the status of support for printing function of used application.

Connecting with DLNA device

Still images, videos or music stored in the terminal can be played back on the DLNA compatible TV or PC. And the contents stored in the DLNA compatible PC or network-attached storage (NAS) can be played back on the terminal

- Wi-Fi network connection is required to connect with DLNA devices. → P127
- For operations of the DLNA device, refer to the operation manual of the DLNA device.
- Connection with the terminal is not guaranteed for all DLNA devices.
- The terminal supports DTCP-IP. Link is not guaranteed for all DTCP-IP devices.

♦ Setting DiXiM Server

Make settings for sharing contents saved in the terminal on your home network.

- From the Home screen, ₩→[DiXiM Player]
 - When the Wi-Fi setting confirmation screen appears, follow the onscreen instructions
- **2**

 ☑→[アプリの設定 (Application settings)]→
 [DiXiM Serverの設定 (DiXiM Server settings)]
 - When [DiXiM Server] confirmation screen appears, tap [はい (Yes)].
- 3 Set required items

DiXiM Server: Mark to enable the server function. サーバー名 (Server name): Change the name displayed on the DLNA device. アクセス権の設定 (Set access right): Mark [アクセス権の初期設定 (Set up access right)] to permit DLNA devices to access the terminal. Unmark it to permit only DLNA devices that are marked in [接続機器の一覧 (Device list)] to access

保存先設定 (Saving location setting)*: Set the saving location of contents uploaded from the DLNA device. You can save on a microSD card or the terminal memory. 公開フォルダ設定 (Visible folder setting): Set a folder of content open to connected devices.

Wi-Fi設定 (Wi-Fi setting): Set Wi-Fi network connection. 非表示になったメッセージ (Hidden message): Set whether to show a message when activating.

自動終了設定 (Automatic end setting): Set [自動終了しない (Not automatically end)] or time until DiXiM Server automatically ends.

* Not displayed if a microSD card is not inserted.

Playing back the terminal's contents on DLNA device

- Activate DiXiM Server to allow access from a DLNA device in advance.
- Operate on a DLNA device
 - Access the DiXiM server of the terminal to play back contents.

✓INFORMATION

 Videos recorded with the terminals camera may not be played with DLNA devices other than F-01K.

♦ Distributing contents in the terminal

Distribute contents on the terminal to DLNA devices. Playback can be operated via the terminal.

- Activate DiXiM Server to allow access from a DLNA device in advance. And, set the DLNA device to allow control from the terminal.
- From the Home screen, P→ [DiXiM Player]
- 2 Select the server name of the terminal in the
- 3 ■→[アブリの設定 (Application settings)]→[コンテンツタップ時の動作 (Action when content is tapped)]→[別の機器で再生 (Play on another device)]
- 4 [再生先機器の選択方法 (Selection method for another player device)]→[その都度選ぶ (Select each time)]/[あらかじめ決めておく (Predetermined)]
 - When you select [その都度選ぶ (Select each time)], go to Step 6.
- 5 [既定の再生機器 (Default player device)]→ Select a DLNA device to play
- - When you select [その都度選ぶ (Select each time)] in Step 4, select a device to play from the device list.

Playing back DLNA devices contents on the terminal

- Disclose contents on the DLNA device to allow access from the terminal in advance.
- From the Home screen, P→ [DiXiM Player]
- 2 Select a server name of a DLNA device in the server list
- 3
 ■→[アブリの設定 (Application settings)]→[コンテンツタップ時の動作 (Action when content is tapped)]→[この端末で再生 (Play on the terminal)]
 - Alternatively, in [コンテンツタップ時の動作 (Action when content is tapped)], select (別の機器で再生 (Play on the other device)] and then select a device to play on other DLNA device.
- Flay back the content on the player screen
 - While playing, tap to enable [連続再生 (Continuous play)] so that you can play recorded content continuously in the list in order.
 - If you change a playing device while playing a content as a player, the playback resumes.

✓INFORMATION -----

 Touch and hold content in the content selection screen to display menu options for playing or deleting the content, or downloading or playing it on another device. However, copyrighted contents may not be downloaded on some DLNA devices.

♦ Playing digital recorded programs

You can save digital recorded programs on DLNA devices such as a recorder to the terminal to play.

- · The DLNA device is required to support uploading a content.
- Set to allow access from the DLNA device beforehand.
- From the Home screen, ₩→[DiXiM Player]
- 🤈 📦→[はい (Yes)]
- Upload from the DLNA device
 - The uploaded content is saved to the saving location that you set in [保存先設定 (Saving location setting)].→ P177
- 4 ■→[持ち出し番組 (Programs to be moved out)]→On the list of programs to be moved out, select a content to play

Connecting with other devices

Displaying on Wi-Fi Miracast device via Wi-Fi connection

Show videos, images, etc on TV screen or displays by connecting the terminal to a Wi-Fi Miracast device through Wi-Fi connection

- From the Home screen, ⊞→[Settings]→
 [Display/Sound/Apps]→[Display &
 Wallpaper]/[Sound]→[Screen/Music Cast]→
 Mark [Enable wireless display]
- 2 Tap a detected Wi-Fi Miracast device

 Disconnecting Wi-Fi Miracast device : Tap a connected

 device DISCONNECTI

✓INFORMATION

- When connecting to a device which does not support HDCP, images/audio may not be output correctly depending on application. Also, output of some contents may be restricted by the content provider or restrained due to problem on performance.
- When you receive a call during connection, incoming call screen also appears on the connected device.
- With some applications, content appears on the connected device, and operations such as playback can be performed from the terminal.

Overseas use

Outline of international roaming (WORLD WING)

With the international roaming (WORLD WING), you can use the terminal without changing phone number or mail address in the service area of the overseas network operator affiliated with DOCOMO. You can use Phone and SMS without changing settings

For details about international roaming (WORLD WING), refer to NTT DOCOMO website

https://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/service/world/roaming/

Available networks

 You can use the terminal within the service area of LTE network, 3G network and GSM/GPRS network. Also, you can use the terminal in countries/regions where 3G850MHz/ GSM850MHz is supported.

✓INFORMATION -----

 For the country codes/international call access number/ Universal number international prefix/compatible countries and regions and overseas network operators, refer to NTT DOCOMO website

Available services for overseas

Main communication services	LTE	3G	3G850	GSM (GPRS)
Phone	0	0	0	0
SMS	0	0	0	0
Packet communication*	0	0	0	0

 To use packet communication during roaming, set Data roaming setting to ON.→P181

✓INFORMATION

- Some services may not be available depending on the network operator or network overseas.
- You can confirm the name of the connected network operator in the detailed screen displayed by tapping the panel switch of radio wave condition (→P53).

Before using the terminal overseas

Before leaving Japan

To use the terminal overseas, check the following in Japan.

■ Subscription

Check if you subscribe to WORLD WING. For details, contact "General Inquiries" on the last page of this manual.

Charging

For details on charging, refer to NTT DOCOMO website.

■ Usage charge

Overseas usage charges (call and packet communication) differ from those in Japan. For details, see NTT DOCOMO website.

 Since some applications automatically perform communications, packet communication charges may become high. For operation of applications, contact the application providers.

♦ Advance preparation

About setting network service

If you subscribe to network services, you can use network services such as Voice Mail Service, Call Forwarding Service, Caller ID request service, etc., even overseas. Some network services are not available.

- To use network services overseas, you need to set "Remote operation settings" to activate. You can set "Remote operation settings" in the country you visit. From Japan (→ P73), from overseas (→P185)
- Even if the setting/canceling operation is available, some network services cannot be used depending on overseas network operators

♦ After arriving overseas

When you arrive overseas and turn the terminal ON, a connection to the available network operator is established automatically

■ Connectivity

When you have set [Network operators] in [Cellular networks] to [Select automatically], optimum network is automatically selected

♦ Settings for overseas use

 If you release SIM lock and use a SIM by the other carrier to perform data communication, set an access point (APN) before use. → P136

❖ Setting Data roaming

To perform packet communications overseas, set Data roaming settings to ON.

From the Home screen, M→[Settings] → [Wireless & networks] → [More] → [Cellular networks]

[8] Overseas use

2 [Data roaming]→Check the contents on the Attention screen, [OK]

Setting Network operators

By default, the terminal is set to automatically search and switch to an available network. To switch network manually, perform the following operations

From the Home screen, ⊞→[Settings]→
[Wireless & networks]→[More]→[Cellular
networks]→[Network operators]

Available networks are searched for and displayed.
 When a message notifying that the network search is not available, confirm the content and tap [OK].

9 Select a network of the network operator

✓INFORMATION -----

Setting Network Mode

- From the Home screen, ⊞ | Settings | → [Wireless & networks] → [More] → [Cellular networks] → [Network Mode]
- 9 [4G/3G/GSM (Auto)]/[3G/GSM]/[GSM]

✓INFORMATION -----

To set network mode automatically, from the Home screen,

 [Settings] → [Wireless & networks] → [More] → [Cellular networks] → [Network operators] → Tap [4G/3G/GSM[Auto]]

♦ Date & time

When [Automatic date & time]/[Automatic time zone] in [Date & time] is marked, the date, time and time differences of the terminal are corrected by receiving information related to time and time differences from the network of overseas telecommunications carrier you connect to

- Correction of the time or time differences may not be performed correctly depending on the network of overseas network operator. In that case, set time zone manually.
- Timing of correction varies by the overseas network operator.
- "Date & time"→P166

About inquiries

- For loss or theft of the terminal or docomo nano UIM card, immediately contact DOCOMO from the spot to take the necessary steps for suspending the use. For inquiries, see the last page of this manual. You can carry out the procedure to suspend the use from My docomo. Note that you are still liable for the call and communication charge incurred after the loss or theft occurred.
- For using from land-line phone, entering "International call access number" or "Universal number international prefix" for the country is needed.

Making/Receiving a call in the country you stay

Making a call to outside country you stay (including Japan)

You can make a call from the country you stay to another country using the international roaming service.

- For details on available countries, network operators, etc., refer to NTT DOCOMO website.
- From the Home screen, 📞
- 2 [Dial]→+ (Touch and hold "0")→Enter "Country code-Area code (City code) without leading 0 and phone number"
 - In some countries and areas such as Italy, "0" is required.
 - To call an overseas WORLD WING user, enter "81" (Japan) for the country code regardless of whether the party is in or out of the country you stay.



Making a video call: • → [Video call]

✓INFORMATION -----

- For details about video call, see "Making a call/video call".→ P67
- If [Automatic conversion] in [International dial assist] is marked, enter a phone number from City code in the same way as in Japan Tap [Convert number].

Making a call inside the country you stay

You can make a call to the other party's land-line phone or mobile phone in the same way you do in Japan.

- From the Home screen, 📞
- ¶ [Dial] → Enter a phone number
 - . Start with the area code (city code).
 - If you make a call to the party using "WORLD WING", make a call as an international call to Japan (by entering the country code "81" (Japan)) even when making a call in the country you stay.
- 3 🔽
- Receiving a call inside the country you stay

You can receive a call in the same way as you do in Japan.

✓INFORMATION

 An incoming call during the international roaming is forwarded internationally from Japan regardless of which country the call is from. A caller is charged for a call fee to Japan, and the receiver is charged for a reception fee.

♦ Making a call to your terminal

- To have the other party in Japan call you overseas Have your phone number dialed as a domestic call in Japan.
- To have the other party make a call from the outside

You have to receive a call through Japan no matter where you are; therefore, the other party needs to enter the international call access number and "81" (Country code of Japan).

International call access number of the country of the caller -81-90 (or 80, 70) - XXXX - XXXX

Setting international roaming

Make settings for international roaming service.

- The settings may not be made depending on overseas network operator.
- From the Home screen, → : → [Call settings]
 → [Roaming settings]
- 9 Set required items

Incoming call restriction while roaming: Set to restrict incoming calls while international roaming.

Incoming call notification while roaming: Set to notify missed calls via SMS in case you are out of service area while international roaming.

Roaming guidance: Set to notify a caller with voice prompt that you are using the international roaming. International dial assist: Setting steps→P184

Network service: Setting steps→P185

- ♦ Setting International dial assist
 - From the Home screen, → : →[Call settings] →[Roaming settings] →[International dial assist]
 - Select the item

Automatic conversion: Activate the automatic conversion function that adds the international prefix or country code. Country code: Select the country code used in the automatic conversion function.

International prefix: Select the country code used in the automatic conversion function

Network service (overseas)

Set the network services such as the voicemail service to use overseas.

- Activate "Remote operation settings" in advance.→P73
- If you make the settings overseas, you are charged a call fee
 to Japan from the country you stay.
- The settings may not be made depending on overseas network operator.
- From the Home screen, → : →[Call settings]
 →[Roaming settings]→[Network service]

Select the service

Remote operation (charges apply): Set whether to start remote operation.

Caller ID notification request service (charges apply): Set to notify a caller with voice prompt to request caller ID when receiving an anonymous call.

Incoming call notification while roaming (charges apply):
→P184

Roaming guidance (charges apply): →P184

Voicemail service (charges apply): Set the terminal to take a message from a caller while you are outside the service area or you turn the terminal off. (Subscription is required.)

Call forwarding service (charges apply): Set the terminal to forward a call to another terminal registered in advance. (Subscription is required.)

Operate according to the onscreen instructions

Operate according to the voice guidance

After returning to Japan

When you return to Japan, the terminal is connected to DOCOMO network automatically. If connection is failed, perform the following operations.

- Set [Network Mode] in [Cellular networks] to [4G/3G/GSM (Auto)] →P182
- Set [Network operators] in [Cellular networks] to [Select automatically]. →P182

Appendix/Index

Troubleshooting (FAQ)

♦ Troubleshooting

- If you suspect the terminal does not operate correctly, you can check with diagnostics by yourself.
 For details, see NTT DOCOMO website.
 https://www.nttdocomo.co.in/english/support/frouble/
- repair/
 Check for the necessity of software update, and update the software if necessary. → P196
- When checking the following items does not improve the state, contact "Repairs (Inquiries/Request)" on the last page of this manual (in Japanese only) or DOCOMO-specified repair office.

■ Power supply and charging

- The terminal cannot be turned ON Check if the battery is not run out.→P35
- The screen freezes/The terminal cannot be turned OFF
 - If the screen does not respond or the power cannot be turned off, press and hold @ and the volume up key for 8 seconds or more and release the fingers after the screen is turned off to shut down the power forcibly.
 - Press and hold and the volume up key for 32 seconds or more and release the fingers after the screen is turned on to restart forcibly.

 Note that data and settings may be erased since that is an operation for shutting down of the power or restarting forcibly.

Cannot charge the battery (the indicator LED does not turn on or blinks)

- Is the adapters power plug inserted to the outlet or accessory socket correctly?
- Are the adapter and the terminal set correctly? → P36
 When using an AC adapter (ontional) check if the Type-
- When using an AC adapter (optional), check if the Type C plug of the AC adapter is connected to the terminal correctly.→P36
- Is the PC turned on when you connect the terminal with the PC via USB connection?
- If you perform call, communication, or operate functions for a long time while charging, temperature of the terminal is raised and the indicator LED (red) may turn off. In high temperature status, the terminal stops charging for safety. Wait a while until the temperature is lowered and retry to charge.

■ Operations/Display

No operations are performed even by tapping or pressing keys

- Is the terminal turned off?→P37
- When you touch the screen at a right angle by gloved finger with [Glove touch] marked, operation may not be performed well. Use a ball of finger to touch the touch panel for operation.→P163

The operation time provided by the battery is short

- Running multiple applications increases battery consumption and usage time may become short. Exit from applications which you are not using as follows Exiting running application→P56

 - Exiting applications with (Back)
- For FAO of arrows or useful method such as reducing. battery consumption refer to @Fケータイ応援団 (@F mobile phone supporters) or arrows@ (http:// atfe.fmworld.net/at/) (in Japanese only).
- Is the terminal left for a long time under the state of out of service area? Out of service area, a lot of power is consumed to search available radio waves. If you are out of service area for a long time, set Airplane mode to ON or turn off the terminal →P37 P133
- . The operation time provided by the internal battery varies by the operating environment and battery deterioration
- . The internal battery is a consumable part. Each time the internal battery is recharged, the battery usage time per one charge gradually decreases. If the operation time becomes too short with fully charged state, contact, "Repairs (Inquiries/Request)" on the last page (in Japanese only) or a DOCOMO-specified repair office.
- . Set the Wi-Fi or Bluetooth to Off when you do not use the function, →P127 . P171
- The docomo nano UIM card is not recognized. Is the docomo nano UIM card installed in the right direction?→P32

The screen reacts slowly when a touch nanel is tanned/ key is pressed

When large amount of data is saved in the terminal or transferring large-size data between the terminal and microSD card, the reactions on the screen may be delayed

- The terminal, etc. become hot while operating/charging. While operating or charging, or if you call or watch TV. etc. for a long time while charging the battery, the terminal, internal battery and adapter may become hot. There is no problem and you can continue to use them.
- The terminal becomes hot while operating/charging If high temperature of the terminal continues, charging or some functions may be disabled
- The terminal becomes hot and the power turns OFF If you activate several applications, use camera, connect to the Internet for a long time while charging the battery. etc., temperature of the terminal may be raised. When the terminal is in high temperature state for a long time. charging or functions may stop or screen brightness may be adjusted. And the power of the terminal may shut down to prevent you from burns.
- The display is dim
 - Have you changed any of the following settings?
 - Emergency mode→P40
 - Brightness→P138
 - Sleep→P138

187

- Battery saver→P144
- When the terminal is in high temperature state for a long time, the display may become dim.

Display flickers

If [Adaptive brightness] is marked, the display may be looked like flickered because backlight automatically changes according to the ambient brightness. -> P137

The display has afterimages

If the same screen is displayed for a while, afterimages of that screen may remain even after the screen is changed for a certain operation.

The clock is not on time

The clock time may become wrong when the power is turned on for a long time. Check if [Automatic date & time]/[Automatic time zone] in Date & time are marked and turn the power off and on in a place with strong radio wave conditions. →P166

Terminal operation is unstable

- Instability may be caused by applications that you installed after you purchased the terminal. If the symptom is improved when you boot the terminal in safe mode (near default state), uninstalling the installed application may improve the symptom.
 Boot the terminal in safe mode by one of the following procedure
 - Press and hold

 until the phone options menu appears → Touch and hold [Power off]/[Restart] → [OK]
- With the power turned off, press and hold of for 2 seconds or more. Immediately after the docomo logo disappears, press and hold the volume down key When safe mode is booted, "Safe mode" is displayed at the lower left of the screen. To exit the safe mode, turn the power OFF and ON.
- * Back up the necessary data before using safe mode.
- * Safe mode is not a normal booting state. To use ordinarily, exit the safe mode.

* Some applications or widgets may be hidden.

Operations are not possible when tapping the screen

- Do you operate with a fingernail or foreign object on the screen?
- Do you put a protective sheet or sticker on the display?
 Depending on the protective sheet, you cannot operate the terminal correctly.
- Do you operate with the touch panel wet or with your finger wet with sweat or water?
- · Do you operate under water?
- Touch the touch panel with your finger directly to operate the terminal.
- Operations are slower/Application operation is unstable/Some applications are not activated.

Operation is unstable when the terminal memory is low. When a message indicating low on memory appears, uninstall unnecessary applications. → P92. P143

- Applications cannot be operated properly (applications cannot be activated/errors occur frequently)
 Are there any applications being disabled? Enable
- Data is not displayed normally/Normal touch panel operations are not possible
 Turn the terminal OFF and ON →P37

disabled applications, then retry. →P143

 The screen does not turn on when Touch and go display is set

Is the touch time on the screen too short?→P139

- Phone/Voice call
- Cannot dial by tapping Do you set Airplane mode?→P133

During a voice call, the distant party's voice is hard to listen to or too loud

Adjust the listening volume. Turn on Voice clear and Voice slowing to make the other party's voice easy to understand. → P70 . P71

Calls are not connected (Even when moving, and does not disappear or although radio waves are enough, making/receiving calls is unavailable)

- Turn the power OFF and ON, or reattach the docomo nano UIM card.→P32, P37
- Due to the nature of radio waves, making/receiving calls
 may be unavailable even when "not out of service area"
 or " appears on the display for the radio wave
 condition." Move to call again
- Do you set call restriction such as Call Blocking?→P74
- Have you changed network type (4G/3G/GSM)?→P182
- Due to the crossing of radio waves, at the crowded public places, calls/mails are crossed and the connection status may not be good. Move to the other place or call again at other time.

The ringtone does not sound

- Is [Ring volume] in Volumes set to 0?→P141
- Have you activated any of the following functions?
 Manner mode → P141
 - Airplane mode →P133
- Do you set call restriction such as Call Blocking?→P74
- The followings are set to 0 seconds?
 - [Set answer time] in the Phone memo setting→P73
 - [Ring time settings] in Voicemail service→P73
 - [Ring time] in Call forwarding service→P73

Calls cannot be made

- Is the docomo nano UIM card installed in the right direction? → P32
- Do you enter a phone number from City code?
- Do vou set Airplane mode?→P133

■ Mail

Mail is not received automatically

- Is Emergency mode set?→P40
- Receive interval in NX! Mail account settings is set to [Do not receive automatically]. → P85

■ TV/Camera

Cannot watch TV

- Are you out of digital terrestrial broadcasting service area or in an area with poor signal strength?
 Changing the direction of the TV antenna cable or moving to the other place may improve the signal reception.—P98
- Do you use the channel list matching with your watching area?→P104

Photos and videos taken with the camera are blurred

- Check if clouds or dirt attach to the lens of camera
- Automatic still image shooting is available in the camera of the terminal, but you can also focus using the touch focus function while shooting still images. →P108

■ ∩eaifu.Kaitai

Osaifu-Keitai function is unavailable

- Is Lock NFC/Osaifu-Keitai activated?→P96
- Do you place mark of the terminal over IC card reader? → P94. P95

Overseas use

Cannot use the terminal even when is displayed overseas

Do you subscribe to WORLD WING? Check if you subscribe to WORLD WING.

- is displayed, and you cannot use the terminal overseas
 - Are you at a location that is outside of the international roaming service area, or where the signal is weak? See NTT DOCOMO website for whether it is an available service areas or overseas network operator.
 - Change network mode type to [4G/3G/GSM(Auto)].→ P182
 - Set the network operator to [Select automatically]. → P182
 - It may be recovered by turning the terminal OFF and ON →P37
- Cannot use the terminal suddenly while using overseas Does usage amount exceed the limit of maximum charges for use? For use of International roaming (WORLD WING), the limit of maximum charges for use is set in advance. When it exceeds the limit of maximum charges for use, pay the charges.

There is no incoming call overseas

Is Incoming call restriction while roaming set to [Activate restriction]?

P184

- No caller ID is notified/A notified caller ID is different from that of the caller/Functions for using contents saved in the phonebook or those using Caller ID notification do not operate
 - Even when a caller notifies its caller ID, it is not displayed on the terminal unless notified from the network or network operator used. And, a notified caller ID may be different from that of the caller by some networks or network operators you use.
- Cannot perform data communication overseas
 Check the data roaming settings. →P181

■ Data management

- Data saved in microSD card is not displayed
 - Reattach the microSD card.→P34
 - If you set a password to microSD card in another terminal, you cannot use the microSD card. Use it after you remove the password with that terminal.
- Data transfer is not performed
 Do you use USB HUB? If you use USB HUB, operations may not be performed correctly.
- Images cannot be viewed

190

If image data is broken, image cannot be viewed. When you open the file with a file manager application etc., a black image may be displayed.

Rhietooth

The terminal cannot be connected to a Bluetooth device/ A Bluetooth communication device cannot be found from the terminal.

Make Bluetooth communication device (commercially available) detectable and then register the device on the terminal. If you delete the registered device and register the device again, delete the registrations on both Bluetooth device (commercially available) and the terminal, and then perform registration of the device. → P171, P172

 Calls cannot be made from the terminal connected to an external device such as car navigation or handsfree device

If calls are made several times when the other party does not answer or is out of service, the call to this number may be disabled. In this case, turn the terminal OFF and ON.

■ Maps/GPS function

Cannot set AUTO-GPS service information.

- Check if the battery level is low and AUTO-GPS function stops. If AUTO-GPS stops due to Low-power operation settings, AUTO-GPS service information cannot be set. In this case, set Low-power operation settings to [Not suspend] or charge the battery.→P35, P146
- Mark [AUTO-GPS operation settings].→P146
- Is the GPS function OFF? When the GPS function is OFF, AUTO-GPS function stops. →P118

Others

 Data saved in USB mass storage is not displayed Reattach the USB mass storage.

Commercially available external devices (USB mouse, keyboard, etc.) are not recognized.

- Connect a USB device to the terminal and operate the following to start using a USB device.

 From the Home screen, PS→ [Settings]→ [Useful tools]
 → [Detect a USB device]→ [DETECT A USB DEVICEUSB]
- When you use Type-C conversion adapter (Commercially available), connect Type-C conversion adapter to the external device and then connect to the terminal.
- * Note that DOCOMO does not guarantee all of commercially products. Use a product compatible with HOST function (OTG function)

♦ Error messages

Memory space is full

The terminal is low on memory. If you keep using, some functions and applications may not be operated.

Open setting screen to select unnecessary apps, then press "Uninstall" to uninstall them.

It is displayed when the available memory of the terminal is low. Tap [Setting screen] to delete unnecessary applications. Alternatively, end running applications or clear cache of applications to increase memory space. → P56, P143

Fingerprint hardware not available.

Displayed when the fingerprint sensor does not work normally. When the fingerprint sensor cannot be used even if you turn the power off and on, contact a nearest sales outlet such as docomo Shop.

[9] Appendix/Index

Cannot activate irie device

It appears when the camera for iris authentication does not work properly. If the camera for iris authentication is disabled even if you turn the power off and on, please contact a docomo Shop near you.

• All voice services are blocked./Voice service is blocked./ Emergency service is blocked./Data service is blocked. Phone line or packet communication facilities are broken down or line or packet communication network is very busy. Wait a while and then operate again.

The PUK is locked

Displayed when you failed to enter PUK of docomo nano UIM card 10 times consecutively. Please contact a sales outlet such as a docomo Shon →P149

No SIM card

Check if the docomo nano UIM card is installed to the terminal correctly.→P32

SIM card is locked

Displayed when you power on the terminal with PIN enabled. Enter correct PIN code. →P157

SIM card is PUK-locked

Displayed when docomo nano UIM card is locked by PUK code. Enter correct PUK code. →P158

SIM card error

SIM card removed. Phone will restart

It may appear when IC of docomo nano UIM card cannot be loaded because of dirt or when docomo nano UIM card is removed with the power ON, but it is not malfunction. Clean the IC of docomo nano UIM card regularly. Do not remove docomo nano UIM card with the power ON. The terminal may not operate normally.

SD card error

SD card removed

To prevent data loss, turn off the device, and then eject SD card.

Do not insert or remove the microSD card when the terminal is powered on. Data may be damaged or the terminal may not operate correctly.

An error occurred during download processing.

If the error message appears several times, restart the terminal and perform the update again.

Anshin Enkaku Support

By sharing screens of your terminal with DOCOMO, you can receive technical support to make settings, use applications, connect with peripheral devices such as a PC. (In Japanese only)

- This service is not available when your docomo nano UIM card is not inserted, during international roaming, or in Airplane mode.
- Anshin Enkaku Support is a charged service requiring subscription.
- Some operations and settings are not supported.
- For details of Anshin Enkaku Support, refer to NTT DOCOMO website.
- Call Support center for Anshin Enkaku Support
 From DOCOMO mobile phones: (No prefix) 15710 (toll free)

(In Japanese only)
From land-line phones : 0120-783-360 (In Japanese

only)

Business hours: 9:00 a.m. to 8:00 p.m. (open all year round)

- To call from the terminal to Anshin Enkaku Support center, from the Home screen, 1991 1速隔サポート (Enkaku support)]→[このスマートフォンから発信する (Make a call from this smartphone)]→Tap 1
- **2** From the Home screen, ⊞→[遠隔サポート (Enkaku support)]

- 3 [遠隔サポートの接続画面に進む (Go to Enkaku support connection screen)]→[同意する (Agree)]
- Enter connection number notified by DOCOMO
- 5 Enkaku support starts when you are connected

193

Warranty and After-Sales Service

❖ Warranty

- The warranty is valid for a period of one year from the date of purchase.
- TV antenna cable F01 is not covered by the cost-free repair warranty
- The specifications and the outer appearance of the terminal, including the accessories, are subject to change for improvement without prior notice.
- Troubles, repair or other handling of the terminal may cause contents in the phonebook etc. to be altered or deleted.
 DOCOMO recommends making a copy of the Phonebook data etc., in case.
- Data such as phonebook entries in the terminal can be saved in a microSD card.
- * Data such as phonebook entries can be backed using docomo cloud.

■ Free repair service provisions

① In case the product has a malfunction under normal-use conditions in line with the directions given in the instruction manual etc., it will be repaired free of charge on the condition that the warranty period has not expired. (In some cases, the product may be replaced with the substitute.)

- ② Even if the warranty period has not expired, a fee will be charged for repair under the following circumstances.
 - The malfunction or damage is due to modification (including alteration of software) of the product.
 - 2. The malfunction or damage is due to damage of the terminal body, display, external connection jack, etc. caused by being dropped or subjected to an external pressure, or the malfunction or damage is due to breakdown or deformation of the internal circuit board of the terminal.
 - 3. The malfunction or damage is due to fire, pollution, abnormal voltage, earthquake, thunder, wind and flood damage or other natural disaster, etc.
 - The malfunction or damage is due to connected devices other than specified or consumable items.
 - 5. The malfunction or damage is due to water infiltration, wetting is detected by wetting detectable sticker of the terminal, signs of submergence or water stain is found, or corrosion by condensation is found.
 - 6. The product has been repaired by other than a repair counter specified by DOCOMO.
- 3 This warranty is valid only in Japan.
- This warranty guarantees repair free of charge during the period and under the conditions specified on this warranty card. Thus this warranty does not limit the legal rights of the owner.
- ⑤ If several malfunctions are detected on the terminal, all of malfunctions will be repaired because the quality of the product cannot be guaranteed by a partial repair. In that case, repair may be out of the warranty of free charge repair.

- The software of the terminal is updated to the latest one when operation confirmation test is performed without regard to repair.
- The second of the second of

-Sales>

NTT DOCOMO INC

11-1, Nagata-cho 2-chome, Chivoda-ku, Tokvo

♦ After Sales Services

■ When problems occur

Before asking repair, see "Troubleshooting" in this manual to check the problem (→P186). If the problem still persists, contact "Repairs (Inquiries/Request)" on the last page (in Japanese only).

If the result of inquiries indicates that a repair is required

Bring the terminal to the DOCOMO-specified repair office. However, it must be taken during business hours of the repair office. Note that repair may take some days depending on the problem.

After expiration of the warranty

All repairs that are requested are charged.

■ Replacement parts

Replacement parts (parts required to maintain functions) will in principle be kept in stock for 4 years after termination of production

For details about technical inquiries and repairs, see NTT

https://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/support/trouble/repair/shop/compatible/index.html (in Japanese only)

However, depending on the malfunctioning part, repair may not be possible due to a lack of replacement parts. Please contact a repair counter specified by DOCOMO.

Notes

- Never modify this terminal or included accessories.
- May cause fire, injuries or malfunction.
- The modified terminal may be repaired only if the owner agrees on that all the modified parts are restored to the original conditions. However, repairs may be refused depending on the modifications
- The following cases may be regarded as modifications.
 - A sticker etc. is put on the display or key part
 - The terminal is embellished with adhesive material etc.
 - Exteriors are replaced with other than DOCOMO's genuine parts
- Repair of failures or damage caused by modification is charged even during the warranty period.
- Do not remove the nameplate attached to the terminal.
 Note that if the content of the nameplate cannot be confirmed due to deliberate removal, replacement, etc., it may disqualify the terminal from repairs.

- Function settings and information may be cleared (reset) by malfunctions, repair or other handling of the terminal.
 Should that happen, set up the functions again. Depending on the setting, a packet communication charge may be applied
- If repair is executed, MAC address for Wi-Fi and Bluetooth address may be changed regardless of malfunction part.
- Take care not to bring an object that is easily affected by magnetism such as a cash card near to the terminal because the card may become unavailable.
- This terminal is waterproof. However, if inside of the terminal gets wet or moist, turn the power off immediately, and bring the terminal to a repair office as soon as possible. Note that repair may not be possible depending on the condition of the terminal

Data you created and downloaded data

Note that data you created or data you retrieved or downloaded from sources other than your terminal may be changed or lost when you change the model or have repairs done to the terminal. DOCOMO shall have no liability for any change or loss of any kind. Note that DOCOMO is not liable for a packet communication charge of re-downloading data. Under some circumstances, DOCOMO may replace your terminal with its equivalent instead of repairing it. In that case, we cannot transfer these data to replaced products except for some data.

Software update

♦ About Software Update

Software Update is a function that checks if update is necessary, and if required, download and install software to update

When update is required, it is notified with (Software Update) on the status bar or in the NTT DOCOMO website.

- Software Update includes the following contents, etc. To use the terminal in safety and more comfortably, be sure to upgrade to the latest version.
 - Improving and adding functions
 - Improving quality
 - Security patch update

✓INFORMATION -----

 Updating can be done even when data saved to the terminal is remaining; note that data may not be always secured depending on the conditions of your terminal (such as malfunction, damage, or water leak). You are recommended to back up necessary data beforehand. However, some data may not be backed up.

& Cautions

- When updating is performed, restoring the previous software is not possible.
- When updating, the private information concerning the terminal (model, serial number, etc.) is automatically sent to the server of DOCOMO. DOCOMO does not use the sent information for purposes except software update.
- When using packet communication via Xi/FOMA, communication charge for downloading is not applied.
- For update using packet communication, docomo nano UIM card subscribed to docomo is required. For using packet communication, depending on the update contents, subscription to sp-mode may be required.
- Making/receiving calls, communications functions and other functions are disabled during installation.
- During installation, all key operations become disabled and installation cannot be canceled on the way.
- After the updating is complete, the terminal restarts.
- When updating is performed, some settings may be initialized. Make the settings again.
- When PIN code is set, the PIN code entry screen appears in the reboot step after rewriting and you need to enter PIN code
- If updating failed and all operations become disabled, please contact the terminal to DOCOMO-specified repair office.
- SMS sent during updating is stored in the SMS center.
- · Updating may take time.

- . Updating is unavailable in the following cases.
 - During a call
 - When the icon (out of service area) is displayed
 - Tethering in use as an access point
 - When date or time is not set correctly
 - When the remaining battery is not sufficient
- When the terminal is low on available memory
- When the basic software is altered
- When s user/guest other than the owner uses the terminal
- Use Wi-Fi connection (with docomo nano UIM card not inserted) to perform updating during international roaming.
- · Exit from all applications before installing.
- Update software when the terminal battery is fully charged.
- Do not turn off the terminal while updating.
- It is recommended that this terminal be put in a place with good reception and not be moved while downloading. The update may stop when it is put in a place with bad reception.
- When it does not need to update, "No upgrade is needed.
 Use it as it is." appears.
- For details about updating available period, refer to NTT DOCOMO website.

Appendix/Index

197

Updating software

- Depending on update, installation may not be reserved and you need to execute the installation by yourself. Open the Notification panel→Tap a notification→Tap [Install].
- Changing the automatic download setting
- From the Home screen, ⊞→[Settings]→
 [System]→[About phone]→[Software Update]
 →Tap the [Auto download/Auto upgrade]
 button and set to ON/OFF
 - When [Auto download/Auto upgrade] is OFF, perform the operation which is described in "When the icon does not appear in the status bar" (→P198).
- When the icon is not displayed on the status bar Perform the update by the following operations.
- From the Home screen, ∰→[Settings]→
 [System]→[About phone]→[Software Update]
 →[Update now]

Downloading starts.

- When the message to start the installation appears, tap [OK]/[Install]
 - Depending on the update contents, the confirmation screen about updating appears after tapping [Update nowl.
 - When the confirmation screen appears, follow the procedure below.

1) Select an upgrade method

Perform now (only via Wi-Fi): Immediately download the update file via Wi-Fi connection.

Perform at scheduled time (via Wi-Fi/Xi): Download the update file via Wi-Fi connection or Xi/FOMA* at the time that is reserved automatically.

- * If download via Xi/FOMA is not available, [Perform at scheduled time (only via Wi-Fi)] appears. When the sp-mode is not set, the update cannot be performed by tapping [Perform at scheduled time (only via Wi-Fi)] I Isa Wi-Fi
- 2 Select operation

Download and Install: After downloading is complete, the installation starts automatically. If you do not tap [OK], the installation starts 10 seconds later.

Download: When downloading of the update file is complete, the installation will not start automatically. To install, you need to implement the installation yourself.

✓INFORMATION -----

- When the latest software is applied to the terminal, "No upgrade is needed. Use it as it is." appears.
- If downloading stops on the way, already downloaded data is retained for up to 14 days. To resume downloading, resume from (Download stopped) on the notification panel.
- When [Perform at scheduled time (Wi-Fi/Xi)] is selected, time for download is automatically set. Changing start time is unavailable. If you do not want to download at the automatically set time, tap [Software Update]→[Back] and then tap [Perform now (only via Wi-Fi)] to download the undate file.

Updating applications

 After updating, check if there is an update for application.
 Operations may become unstable or function may not work properly without updating the application. Be sure to upgrade to the latest version.

■ Updating from the notification icon

After the updating is complete, the terminal restarts and the notification icon ☑ (Updating has been completed) appears. Open the Notification panel→[Updating has been completed] → [OK] to update applications in the update list.

■ Updating from Play Store

From the Home screen, [Play Store]→Flick right the left edge of the screen→Update each application in [My apps & games].

✓INFORMATION -----

 For OS version support information on each application, contact the application provider.

Main specifications

Phone

Product name)	F-01K	
Size		Approx. 149 mm (H)×72 mm (W)×8.1 mm (T)	
Weight		Approx. 154 g	
Internal memory		ROM : 32GB ^{*1} RAM : 4GB	
Continuous stand-by	FOMA/3G	Stationary (Auto) : Approx. 450 hours	
time*2,3	GSM	Stationary (Auto) : Approx. 340 hours	
	LTE	Stationary (Auto) : Approx. 400 hours	
Continuous FOMA/3G		Approx. 770 min.	
call time*3, 4	GSM	Approx. 700 min.	
	VoLTE (Voice call)	VoLTE : Approx. 850 min. VoLTE (HD+) : Approx. 790 min.	
Continuous 15 time*5	Seg watching	Approx. 510 min.	
Continuous Full Seg watching time *5		Approx. 450 min.	

Charging time ^{*6}		AC Adapter 06 : Approx. 130 min. DC Adapter 05 : Approx. 140 min.	
Display	Туре	TFT	
	Size	Approx. 5.2 inch	
	Number of colors	16777216 colors	
	Resolution	1080 (H)×1920 (V) pixels (FHD)	
Image pickup device	Туре	Out-camera : Backside- illumination layered CMOS In-camera : Backside- illuminated CMOS	
	Size	Out-camera : 1/2.3 inch In-camera : 1/5 inch	
Number of eff	fective pixels	Out-camera : Approx. 23.0 million pixels In-camera : Approx. 5.0 million pixels	
Number of recording pixels (Max.)		Out-camera : Approx. 22.9 million pixels In-camera : Approx. 5.0 million pixels	
Digital zoom	Still images	Out-camera : Up to approx. 8.0 x (80 levels)	
	Videos	Out-camera : Up to approx. 8.0 x (80 levels)	

Still picture recording size	Out-camera: 23M 5520 × 4140 17M 5520 × 3104 8M 3840 × 2160 3M 2048 × 1536 Fit screen 1920 × 1080 Mobile email 640×480*7 In-camera: 5M 2592 × 1944 3.7M 2592 × 1458 3M 2048 × 1536 Fit screen 1920 × 1080 Mobile email 640 × 480
Video recording size	Out-camera : 4K 3840×2160*8 FullHD 1920 × 1080 HD 1280 × 720 Mobile email 640 × 480 In-camera: FullHD 1920 × 1080 HD 1280 × 720 Mobile email 640 × 480
Wireless LAN	IEEE802.11a/b/g/n/ac- compliant* ^{9, 10}

Bluetooth	Version	5.0 ^{*11}
	Output	BT5.0 BR/EDR : Power Class 1 BT5.0 LE : Power Class2
	Supported profile*12	HFP (1.6)*13, HSP (1.2), OPP (1.2), SPP (1.2), HID (1.0), A2DP (1.2)*14, AVRCP (1.5), PBAP (1.2), PAN (1.0)*15, HDP (1.0), ANP (1.0), FMP (1.0), PASP (1.0), PXP (1.0), TIP (1.0), HOGP (1.0)
Earphone/mid	crophone jack	ϕ 3.5 mm earphone jack, tetrapolar
Display langu	age	Japanese/English

Japanese/English

search function

Subjected to Google voice

*1 It is not the actual storage capacity because the memory is also used for the Android OS and preinstalled applications.

For available memory, see "Storage" → P144

Input language (Character

Input language (Voice

entry)

input)

- *2 Continuous stand-by time indicates the estimated stand-by time when radio signal reception is normal. Stationary continuous standby time indicates the estimated average operation time when radio signal reception is normal.
 - Due to internal battery charging condition, function settings, operating environment such as ambient temperature, radio wave conditions in the area of use (the radio waves are weak or absent), etc. stand-by time may be reduced to about half.
- *3 Activating applications also reduces call (communication)/stand-by time even if you do not call or use the Internet.

- *4 Continuous call time indicates the estimated time that the phone can send or receive radio waves normally.
- *5 Continuous 1Seg/Full Seg watching time indicates the estimated watching time when radio signal reception is normal.
- *6 Charging time indicates the estimated time for firstly charging an empty internal battery with the terminal turned OFF for approximately 10 minutes, and then charging with the terminal turned ON. When the temperature is high or low, it takes a long time for charging.
- *7 Setting can be made in RapidPic mode only.
- 8 When temperature of the terminal is raised during using, the camera operation may be ended.
- *9 2.4 GHz/5 GHz are supported for IEEE 802.11n.
- *10 IEEE802.11n/ac supports MIMO.
- 11 It is confirmed that the terminal and all Bluetooth devices are compliant with Bluetooth standards designated by Bluetooth SIG, and they are authenticated. However, procedures may differ or data transfer may not be possible depending on the device's characteristics or specifications.
- *12 These are created by standardizing connection procedures for Bluetooth communications according to individual product properties.
- *13 It supports mSBC (16kHz) and CVSD.
- *14 The terminal supports aptX, aptX HD and SBC audio codecs.
- *15 The terminal supports PAN-NAP and PANU.

■Internal battery

Battery used	Li-ion battery
Nominal voltage	3.80V
Nominal capacity	2580mAh

File formats of still images and videos taken by the terminal

Туре	File format	Extension
Still images	JPEG	.jpg
Videos	MP4	.mp4

Recording time of video (Estimation)

Shooting Size	Maximum recording time per one item
FullHD	Approx. 36 min.
1920×1080	

❖ Recording time of 1Seg (Estimation)

 Varies by memory space of the terminal or contents of program to be recorded (data broadcasting volume etc.).

	Terminal (maximum recording time per one item)	
Ann	rox 600 min	Ī

^{*} Maximum recording time per 1 GB is approximately 300 minutes.

Recording time of Full Seg (Estimation)

 Varies by memory space of the terminal/microSD card or contents of program to be recorded (data broadcasting volume etc.).

Terminal*1 (maximum recording time per one item)	microSD card ^{*1} (maximum recording time per one item)
per one item)	per one item)

^{*1} Maximum recording time per 1 GB is approximately 10 minutes.

Δ Δvailable files for the terminal

You can create, view and edit (save) the following files using the "Word", "Excel", and "PowerPoint" applications in the terminal

Type/Extension	n	Create	View	Edit (Save)
Document file	.doc	×	0	0
(Word)	.docx	0	0	0
Spreadsheet file (Excel)	.xls	×	0	0
	.xlsx	0	0	0
Presentation file (PowerPoint)	.ppt	×	0	0
	.pptx	0	0	0

^{*2} The recording time when a microSDXC card of 128 GB is used.

Specific Absorption Rate (SAR) of Mobile Phones

This model F-01K mobile phone complies with Japanese technical regulations and international guidelines regarding exposure to radio waves.

This mobile phone was designed in observance of Japanese technical regulations regarding exposure to radio waves *1 and limits to exposure to radio waves recommended by a set of equivalent international guidelines. This set of international guidelines was set out by the International Commission on Non-lonizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP), which is in collaboration with the World Health Organization (WHO), and the permissible limits include a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health condition.

The technical regulations and international guidelines set out limits for radio waves as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR, which is the value of absorbed energy in any 10 grams of tissue over a 6-minute period. The SAR limit for mobile phones is 2.0 W/kg. The highest SAR value for this mobile phone when tested for use near the head is 0.886 W/kg *2 and when worn on the body is 0.398 W/kg *3. There may be slight differences between the SAR levels for each product, but they all satisfy the limit.

The actual SAR of this mobile phone while operating can be well below that indicated above. This is due to automatic changes to the power level of the device to ensure it only uses the minimum required to reach the network. Therefore in general, the closer you are to a base station, the lower the power output of the device.

This mobile phone can be used in positions other than against your head. Please keep the mobile phone farther than 1.5 cm away from your body by using such as a carrying case or a wearable accessory without including any metals. This mobile phone satisfies the technical regulations and international guidelines.

The World Health Organization has stated that "a large number of studies have been performed over the last two decades to assess whether mobile phones pose a potential health risk. To date, no adverse health effects have been established as being caused by mobile phone use."

Please refer to the WHO website if you would like more detailed information.

http://www.who.int/docstore/peh-emf/publications/ facts_press/fact_english.htm

Please refer to the websites listed below if you would like more detailed information regarding SAR.

Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications Website: http://www.tele.soumu.go.ip/e/sys/ele/index.htm

Association of Radio Industries and Businesses Website: http://www.arib-emf.org/01denpa/denpa02-02.html (in Japanese only)

NTT DOCOMO, INC. Website:

https://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/product/sar/ FUJITSU LIMITED Website:

http://www.fmworld.net/product/phone/sar/ (in Japanese only)

- 1 Technical regulations are defined by the Ministerial Ordinance Related to Radio Law (Article 14-2 of Radio Equipment Regulations).
- *2 Including other radio systems that can be simultaneously used with LTE/FOMA.

*3 Including other radio systems that can be simultaneously used with LTE/FOMA

Declaration of Conformity

Trade Mark: Fujitsu

Hereby, Fujitsu Connected Technologies Ltd. declares that the RE product of "F-01K" is in compliance with RED 2014/53/ELI

The full text of the EU DoC is available at the following internet address:

https://www.fmworld.net/product/phone/doc/ (in Japanese only)

This mobile phone complies with the EU requirements for exposure to radio waves. Your mobile phone is a radio transceiver, designed and manufactured not to exceed the SAR*1 limits*2 for exposure to radio-frequency (RF) energy, which SAR*1 value, when tested for compliance against the standard was 0.36 W/kg*3 for HEAD and 1.10 W/kg*3 for BODY. While there may be differences between the SAR*1 levels of various phones and at various positions, they all meet*4 the EU requirements for RF exposure.

*1 The exposure standard for mobile phones employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR.

- *2 The SAR limit for mobile phones used by the public is 2.0 watts/kilogram (W/kg) averaged over ten grams of tissue, recommended by The Council of the European Union. The limit incorporates a substantial margin of safety to give additional protection for the public and to account for any variations in measurements.
- 3 Including other radio systems that can be simultaneously used with cellular radio wave
- *4 Tests for SAR have been conducted using standard operation positions with the phone transmitting at its highest certified power level in all tested frequency bands. Although the SAR is determined at the highest certified power level, the actual SAR level of the phone while operating can be well below the maximum value. This is because the phone is designed to operate at multiple power levels so as to use only the power required to reach the network. In general, the closer you are to a base station antenna, the lower the power output.

Radio type/Description		Transmitter Frequency	Maximum Output Power
GSM	GSM900	880-915MHz	33.0dBm
GOIVI	DCS1800	1710-1785MHz	29.5dBm
UMTS	FDD I	1920-1980MHz	24.0dBm
LTE	FDD 1	1920-1980MHz	24.0dBm
LIL	FDD 3	1710-1785MHz	24.0dBm
14/1 A N I	IEEE 802.11b	2400-2483.5MHz	15.0dBm
WLAN 2.4GHz	IEEE 802.11g	2400-2483.5MHz	15.0dBm
20112	IEEE 802.11n	2400-2483.5MHz	18.0dBm

Radio type/Description		Transmitter Frequency	Maximum Output Power
WLAN 5GHz	IEEE 802.11a	5150-5350MHz	13.5dBm
		5470-5725MHz	13.5dBm
	IEEE 802.11n	5150-5350MHz	16.5dBm
		5470-5725MHz	16.5dBm
	IEEE 802.11ac	5150-5350MHz	16.5dBm
		5470-5725MHz	16.5dBm
Bluetooth	Bluetooth	2400-2483.5MHz	11.0dBm
ANT+	ANT+	2400-2483.5MHz	-3.0dBm
RFID	NFC	13.56MHz	12dB μ A/m at 10m

The manufacturer of this product is Fujitsu Connected Technologies Ltd. with its registered place of business at 1-1, Kamikodanaka 4-chome, Nakahara-ku, Kawasaki, Kanagawa 211-8588. Japan.

◆ Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Notice

- This device complies with part 15 of the FCC rules.

 Operation is subject to the following two conditions:
 - 1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and
- this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.
- Changes or modifications made in or to the radio phone, not expressly approved by the manufacturer, will void the user's authority to operate the equipment.
- . The device complies with 15,205 of the FCC Rules.

► FCC RF Exposure Information This model phone meets the U.S. Government's requirements

for exposure to radio waves. This model phone contains a radio transmitter and receiver. This model phone is designed and manufactured not to exceed the emission limits for exposure to radio frequency (RF) energy as set by the FCC of the U.S. Government. These limits are part of comprehensive quidelines and establish permitted levels of RF energy for the general population. The guidelines are based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organizations through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies. The exposure standard for wireless mobile phones employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate (SAR). The SAR limit set by the FCC is 1.6 W/kg. Tests for SAR are conducted using standard operating positions as accepted by the FCC with the phone transmitting at its highest certified power level in all tested frequency bands. Although the SAR is determined at the highest certified power level, the actual SAR level of the phone while operating can be well below the

maximum value. This is because the phone is designed to operate at multiple power levels so as to use only the power required to reach the network. In general, the closer you are to a wireless base station antenna, the lower the power output level of the phone.

Before a phone model is available for sale to the public, it must be tested and certified to prove to the FCC that it does not exceed the limit established by the U.S. government-adopted requirement for safe exposure. The tests are performed on position and locations (for example, at the ear and worn on the body) as required by FCC for each model. The highest SAR value for this model phone as reported to the FCC, when tested for use at the ear, is 1.07 W/kg*, and when worn on the body, is 1.17 W/kg*. (Body-worn measurements differ among phone models, depending upon available accessories and FCC requirements).

While there may be differences between the SAR levels of various phones and at various positions, they all meet the U.S. government requirements. The FCC has granted an Equipment Authorization for this model phone with all reported SAR levels evaluated as in compliance with the FCC RF exposure guidelines. SAR information on this model phone is on file with the FCC and can be found under the Equipment Authorization Search section at http://www.fcc.gov/oet/ea/fccid/(please search on FCC ID VOK-FO1K).

For body worn operation, this phone has been tested and meets the FCC RF exposure guidelines.

Please use an accessory designated for this product or an accessory which contains no metal and which positions the handset a minimum of 1.0 cm from the body.

- In the United States, the SAR limit for wireless mobile phones used by the general public is 1.6 Watts/kg (W/kg), averaged over one gram of tissue. SAR values may vary depending upon national reporting requirements and the network band.
- * Including other radio systems that can be simultaneously used with cellular radio wave

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules

These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

♦ Important Safety Information

AIRCRAFT

Switch off your wireless device when boarding an aircraft or whenever you are instructed to do so by airline staff. If your device offers flight mode or similar feature consult airline staff as to whether it can be used on board.

DRIVING

Full attention should be given to driving at all times and local laws and regulations restricting the use of wireless devices while driving must be observed.

HOSPITALS

Mobile phones should be switched off wherever you are requested to do so in hospitals, clinics or health care facilities. These requests are designed to prevent possible interference with sensitive medical equipment.

PETROL STATIONS

Obey all posted signs with respect to the use of wireless devices or other radio equipment in locations with flammable material and chemicals. Switch off your wireless device whenever you are instructed to do so by authorized staff.

INTERFERENCE

Care must be taken when using the phone in close proximity to personal medical devices, such as pacemakers and hearing aids

Pacemakers

Pacemaker manufacturers recommend that a minimum separation of 15 cm be maintained between a mobile phone and a pace maker to avoid potential interference with the pacemaker. To achieve this use the phone on the opposite ear to your pacemaker and does not carry it in a breast pocket.

Hearing Aids

Some digital wireless phones may interfere with some hearing aids. In the event of such interference, you may want to consult your hearing aid manufacturer to discuss alternatives.

For other Medical Devices :

Please consult your physician and the device manufacturer to determine if operation of your phone may interfere with the operation of your medical device.

Warning

This device have been tested to comply with the Sound Pressure Level requirement laid down in the applicable EN 50332-1 and/or EN 50332-2 standards. Permanent hearing loss may occur if earphones or headphones are used at high volume for prolonged periods of time.

<Pre><Prevention of Hearing Loss>

Warning statement requirement under EN 60950-1:A12.



Warning: To prevent possible hearing damage, do not listen to high volume levels for long periods.

Export Administration Regulations

This product and its accessories may be under coverage of the Export Administration Regulations of Japan ("Foreign Exchange and Foreign Trade Control Laws" and the related laws and regulations). And, they may be also under coverage of Export Administration Regulations of the U.S. When exporting and reexporting this product and its accessories, take necessary procedures on your responsibility and expense. For details, contact Ministry of Economy, Trade and Industry of Japan or US Department of Commerce.

Intellectual Property Right

Copyrights and portrait rights

Except for the case protected by copyright laws such as personal use, use of terminal to reproduce, alter, or publicly transmit recorded pictures or sounds, or copyrighted text, images, music or software downloaded from websites without the copyright holder's authorization is prohibited.

Note that taking photos or recordings at some demonstrations, performances or exhibitions may be prohibited even when only for personal use.

Avoid taking pictures of others with the terminal without their consent or disclosing recorded pictures of others without their consent to general public through Internet websites etc., because they may infringe on portrait rights.

♦ Trademarks

"FOMA", "ToruCa", "mopera U", "WORLD CALL", "WORLD WING", "ip", "sp-mode", "Xi", "dmenu", "LIVE UX", logo of "ToruCa", logo of "Osaifu-Keitai", logo of "lib", logo of "Shabette concier", logo of "dmenu", logo of "dmarket", logo of "Shabette concier", logo of "Instruction Manual", logo of "Anshin Scan", logo of "Anshin Enkaku Support", logo of "Photo collection", logo of "Hanashite Hon'yaku", logo of "docomo mail", logo of "docomo Data Copy", logo of "docomo voicemail", logo of "docomo phonebook", logo of "Data storage BOX", logo of "Schedule", logo of "Memo", and logo of "My Magazine" are trademarks or registered trademarks of NTT DOCOMO. INC.

- "Catch Phone (Call waiting service)" is a registered. trademark of Ninnon Telegraph and Telephone Cornoration
- Royi G-GLIDE G-GLIDE MORILE and G-Guide related logge are trademarks or registered trademarks of Rovi Corporation and/or its subsidiaries in Janan
- "ATOK" is a registered trademark of JustSystems Corporation in Japan and other countries, "ATOK" is a copyrighted work of JustSystems Corporation and other rights are those of JustSystems Corporation and respective owners.



- a registered trademark of FeliCa Networks, Inc.
- FeliCa is a registered trademark of Sony Corporation.
- OR code is a registered trademark of Denso Wave Inc.
- Copyright© 2017 DigiOn, Inc. All rights reserved. DigiOn and DiXiM are registered trademarks of DigiOn, Inc.



- Twitter and Twitter logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Twitter, Inc.
- Facebook and Facebook logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Facebook, INC.
- · microSD logo, microSDHC logo and microSDXC logo are trademarks of SD-3C, LLC.





- . Google, Android, and Google Play, and other marks are trademarks of Google LLC.
- The Bluetooth[®] and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG. INC, and any use of such marks by NTT DOCOMO, INC, is under license. Other trademarks and names are those of their respective owners.

- Qualcomm antX audio is a product of Qualcomm Technologies International 1td
 - Qualcomm is a trademark of Qualcomm Incorporated registered in the United States, and other countries, used with permission, aptX is a trademark of Qualcomm Technologies International Ltd. registered in the United States and other countries used with nermission
- . Dolby, Dolby Audio and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories, Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories.
- "LID新丸ゴ (LID Shin Maru Go)" is provided by Morisawa Inc and the copyrights of its font data belong to them. Wi-Fi, logo of Wi-Fi, Wi-Fi Alliance, WMM.
- Wi-Fi CERTIFIED, logo of Wi-Fi CERTIFIED. WPA, WPA2, Wi-Fi Protected Setup, Wi-Fi Direct and Miracast are trademarks or registered trademarks of Wi-Fi Alliance
- DLNA[®], the DLNA Logo and DLNA CERTIFIED™ are trademarks, service marks, or certification marks of the Digital Living Network Alliance. DLNA certification of this model is acquired by FUJITSU CONNECTED TECHNOLOGIES LIMITED
- AOSS™ is a trademark of BLIFFALO INC.



- iWnn© OMRON SOFTWARE Co., Ltd. 2008-2017 All Rights Reserved
- Dynastream and ANT are registered trademarks of Garmin Ltd. and/or its subsidiaries in the United States and other countries



- ANT+™. ANT+ logo and ANT+ CAPABLE logo are registered trademarks of Garmin Ltd. and/or its subsidiaries in the United States and other countries.
- . "IPS-NEO" is a trademark of Japan Display, Inc.

- Microsoft, Windows, Microsoft Excel, Microsoft PowerPoint, OneNote, and OneDrive are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- Microsoft Word is a product name of Microsoft Corporation in the United States.
- Other company and product names mentioned in this manual are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective holders.
- All other trademarks are those of their respective owners.

Others

- Part of this product includes module developed by Independent JPEG Group.
- FeliCa is a contactless IC card technology developed by Sony Corporation.
- This product is licensed based on MPEG-4 Visual Patent Portfolio License. The use of MPEG-4 Video Codec function is allowed for personal and nonprofit use only in the cases helow
 - Recording moving pictures and i-motion that conform to MPEG-4 Visual Standard (hereinafter referred to as MPEG-4 Video)
 - Playing MPEG-4 Videos recorded personally by consumers not engaged in profit activities
 - Playing MPEG-4 Video supplied from the provider licensed from MPEG-LA

For further utilizing such as promotion, in-house use or profit-making business, please contact MPEG LA, LLC in U.S.

 This product is licensed under the AVC patent portfolio license for the personal and noncommercial use of a consumer to (i) encode video in compliance with the AVC standard (henceforth referred to as AVC video) and/or (ii) decode AVC video that was encoded by a consumer engaged in a personal and noncommercial activity and/or was obtained from a video provider licensed to provide AVC video. No license is granted or shall be implied for any other use. Additional information may be obtained from MPEG LA, L.L.C.

See http://www.mpegla.com

♦ Open source software

- Software licensed under Apache License V2.0 and necessarily modified by us is used for this product.
- This product contains open source software complying with GNU General Public License (GPL), GNU Lesser General Public License (LGPL), etc.

For details on the software license, from the Home screen,

☐ Settings] → [System] → [About phone] → [Legal information] → See [Open source licenses]

For software source codes disclosed based on the open source licenses, refer to the following website. For details, refer the website below

http://spf.fmworld.net/fujitsu/c/develop/sp/android/ (In Japanese only)

SIM unlock

This terminal supports SIM unlock. If you release SIM lock, you can use SIM by a carrier other than NTT DOCOMO.

- Available services and functions may be limited. DOCOMO is not liable to any failures or malfunctions.
- For details of SIM unlock procedure, refer to NTT DOCOMO website.
- Install SIM by a carrier other than NTT DOCOMO
- 7 Turn the terminal ON
- Enter SIM unlock code
- **⚠** [UNLOCK]

✓INFORMATION

To check the SIM unlock status, from the Home screen, ¬ Tap [*], [#], [*], [#], [6], [6], [9], [#], [*], [#], [*]. The meanings of the display are as follows.

SIM Lock : SIM is locked

SIM Unlock: SIM lock is unlocked

-: SIM card such as docomo nano UIM card is not inserted/ Unknown SIM card is inserted.

Index

| A | |
|----------------------------------|-----|
| About phone | 167 |
| Auth | 167 |
| Legal information | 167 |
| Status | 167 |
| Access point | 136 |
| Adding | 136 |
| Checking | 136 |
| Initializing | |
| Accessibility | 166 |
| Accessibility shortcut | |
| Captions | |
| Click after pointer stops moving | |
| Color correction | |
| Color inversion | |
| Display size | |
| Exlider service | |
| Font size | |
| High contrast text | |
| Large mouse pointer | |
| Magnification gestures | |
| Mono audio | |
| Osusume hint | |
| Speak passwords | |
| Text-to-speech output | |
| Touch & hold delay | |
| Accounts | |
| Adding | 158 |
| | |

| Cancel sync | 159 |
|-----------------------------------|-----|
| Deleting | 159 |
| Settings | 158 |
| Synchronizing manually | |
| Adaptive brightness | 137 |
| After-Sales Service | 194 |
| Airplane mode | 133 |
| Album-Scene | 113 |
| Viewing still image/Playing video | 113 |
| Android Beam | |
| Anshin Enkaku Support | 193 |
| APN | 136 |
| Application list | |
| Disabling applications | 64 |
| Managing | 64 |
| Sorting | 64 |
| Uninstalling | |
| Application permissions | |
| Application pinning | 158 |
| Apps | |
| CLEAR CACHE | 143 |
| CLEAR DATA | |
| Deleting | |
| DISABLE | 143 |
| Uninstalling | |
| Area Mail | 86 |
| Beep tone | |
| Check screen image and beep tone | |
| Checking later | 87 |
| Deleting | |
| Receive setting | 87 |
| Receiving | |
| Settings | 87 |
| Simple Japanese display | 87 |

| Translation/App link setting | 87 | Renaming | 172 |
|--------------------------------|-----|-----------------------------------|-----|
| Automatic still image shooting | | Sending/Receiving data | |
| Adjust flicker | 108 | Unpairing | 172 |
| Auto focus | 108 | Bluetooth Low Energy | 173 |
| Automatic exposure | 108 | Alert Notification | 173 |
| Scene mode | 108 | Alert Notification Detail Setting | 173 |
| Touch focus | 108 | Find Me Ringtone | 173 |
| White balance | 108 | Find Me Ringtone Settings | |
| Automatic video recording | 111 | Proximity | 173 |
| Adjust flicker | 111 | Time | 173 |
| Auto focus | 111 | Bluetooth tethering | 134 |
| White balance | 111 | Bookmarks | 89 |
| Auto-rotate screen | 137 | Delete | 89 |
| | | Edit | 89 |
| В | | | |
| Back side microphone | 30 | C | |
| Backup & reset | | Calculator | 122 |
| Automatic restore | 161 | Call forwarding service | |
| Back up my data | 161 | Call notification | 73 |
| Backup account | 161 | Call waiting | 7 |
| Initializing data | 161 | Caller ID display request service | 7 |
| Safe data storage | 161 | Camera | 104 |
| Battery | 144 | Automatic still image shooting | 108 |
| Battery life | 35 | Automatic video recording | 11 |
| Charging | 35 | Cautions on shooting | 104 |
| Battery optimization | 145 | Continuous shooting | 10 |
| Battery saver | 144 | Panorama shooting | 10 |
| Blue light cut mode | 137 | Shooting high speed videos | 110 |
| Bluetooth antenna section | 30 | Shooting settings for still image | 108 |
| Bluetooth communication | 170 | Shooting settings for video | 11 |
| Canceling connection | 172 | Still image shooting | |
| Connecting | 171 | Switch to in-camera/out-camera | |
| Function ON/OFF | 171 | Video shooting | 109 |
| Pairing | 171 | Capture & Draw | 5! |
| | | | |

| Cellular networks | 136 |
|---------------------------------|-----|
| Character entry | 41 |
| Editing text | 46 |
| Keyboard | 41 |
| Setting | 45 |
| Voice input | 42 |
| Charging | 35 |
| AC adapter | |
| Charging adapter | 36 |
| PC | |
| Precautions | 35 |
| Chrome | 88 |
| Bookmark | 89 |
| Displaying | 88 |
| Downloading images | 89 |
| Highlight & Copy | |
| History | |
| Incognito tab | 88 |
| Link operation | 89 |
| Opening a new tab | 88 |
| Print | 90 |
| Registering | 89 |
| Screen operation | |
| Settings | |
| Clear credentials | 157 |
| Clear Font | 160 |
| Clock | 120 |
| Alarm | 120 |
| Stopwatch | 121 |
| Timer | 121 |
| World clock | 120 |
| Connecting Wi-Fi network easily | 128 |
| AOSS system | |
| WPS system | 129 |
| • | |

| Customize screen | |
|---------------------------------------|-----|
| D | |
| d ACCOUNT | |
| Data roaming | 181 |
| Data usage | 132 |
| Billing cycle | 132 |
| Cellular data | |
| Date | |
| Date & time | 166 |
| Automatic date & time | 166 |
| Automatic time zone | 166 |
| Select time zone | |
| Set date | |
| Set time | 166 |
| Use 24-hour format | |
| Decline call | 69 |
| Default alarm ringtone | |
| Default notification ringtone | |
| Default SMS application | |
| Detect a USB device | 162 |
| Device administrators | 147 |
| Dial pad tones | |
| Display | |
| Switching the portrait/landscape view | |
| Display size | |
| Display & Wallpaper | |
| DiXiM Player | 177 |
| DLNA | |
| Distributing | 178 |
| DiXiM Server setting | |
| Playing back on the terminal | |
| Playing digital recorded programs | 179 |
| Playing pack on DLNA device | |

0..........

EC

| dmarket | |
|---|---------|
| dmenu | 91 |
| Do not disturb | |
| docomo Data Copy | 123 |
| Backing up to/Restoring from microSD card | 124 |
| Backing up to/Restoring to docomo cloud | 125 |
| Data Copy | 123 |
| docomo LÍVE UX | 58 |
| docomo mail | 80 |
| docomo nano UIM card | 32 |
| Installing | 32 |
| Removing | 33 |
| Security code | 33, 149 |
| docomo service/cloud | 146 |
| AUTO-GPS | 146 |
| d ACCOUNT setting | 146 |
| docomo apps management | 146 |
| docomo cloud | |
| docomo location information | 146 |
| docomo service initial settings | 146 |
| Open source licenses | 147 |
| Osusume hint | 146 |
| Profile setting | 146 |
| Send device error information | 146 |
| Switch USB debugging | 146 |
| Dolby Audio | |
| Double-tap | 38 |
| Drag | 38 |
| Draining water | |
| - | |
| E | |
| Early warning "Area Mail" | 86 |
| Earphone Launcher | 162 |
| Earpiece | |
| • | |

| Easy settings for Wi-Fi tethering | |
|---|--------------------------------|
| Editing text | |
| Emergency information | 145 |
| Emergency mode | 40 |
| Enabling/Disabling the data communication | 136 |
| English display | |
| English guidance | 73 |
| Error messages | 191 |
| Exlider | |
| Exlider settings | |
| Export Administration Regulations | 208 |
| External device connection | 175 |
| Connecting with a PC | 175 |
| Connecting with a printer using cloud print | 175 |
| Connecting with DLNA device | |
| Displaying on Wi-Fi Miracast device | 179 |
| External storage | |
| | |
| | • |
| F | |
| | 186 |
| F | |
| F FAQ | 169 |
| FAQFile operations | 169
151 |
| FAQ | 169
151
153 |
| FAQFile operationsFingerprint authentication | 169
151
153
152 |
| FAQ File operations Fingerprint authentication Authentication Registering | 169
151
153
152 |
| FAQ | 169
151
153
152
31 |
| F FAQ. File operations Fingerprint authentication Authentication Registering Fingerprint sensor Flash | 1691511531523130 |
| FAQ | 169151153152313038 |
| F FAQ. File operations. Fingerprint authentication. Authentication Registering. Fingerprint sensor. Flash. Flick FOMA antenna section. | 16915115315231303830 |
| F FAQ. File operations. Fingerprint authentication Authentication Registering Fingerprint sensor. Flash Flick FOMA antenna section Font settings Font size. | 16915115231303830160 .137, 160 |
| F FAQ File operations. Fingerprint authentication. Authentication Registering. Fingerprint sensor. Flash Flick FOMA antenna section Font settings | 16915115231303830160137, 160 |
| FAQ | 16915115231303830160137, 160 |

| G | |
|-------------------------------|-------------|
| Gestures | 146 |
| Jump to Camera | |
| Turn off sound when flipped | 146 |
| Glove touch | |
| Gmail | |
| Displaying | |
| Google | |
| Google Account | |
| Google Maps | |
| Google Play | |
| Google Search | |
| GPS antenna section | 30 |
| н | |
| Handwritten input | <i>(</i> 11 |
| HF Player | |
| Playing music | |
| Playlist | |
| Purchasing from d music etc | |
| Hide recently used app | |
| Highlight & Copy | |
| Home screen | |
| Adding | |
| Back to apps list | |
| Back up and restore | |
| Create folder | 58 |
| Customizing | 58 |
| Deleting | |
| Disabling applications | 59 |
| Home screens | |
| Kisekae | |
| Removing applications/widgets | 59 |

| Setting Machi-Chara | 6 |
|------------------------------------|---|
| Wallpaper | |
| Homescreen selector | |
| How to use Exlider | 3 |
| | |
| | |
| lcon | 4 |
| Back icon | |
| History icon | 4 |
| Home icon | 4 |
| Navigation bar | 4 |
| Notification icon | 5 |
| Slide display icon | |
| Status bar | |
| Status icon | |
| Zoom at any time icon | |
| iD application | |
| In-camera | |
| Indicator LED | |
| Information of home application | |
| Initial settings | |
| Initializing | |
| Install certificates | |
| Intellectual Property Right | |
| Internal storage | |
| International call (WORLD CALL) | |
| International dial assist | |
| International roaming (WORLD WING) | |
| Network service | |
| Setting | |
| Internet call | |
| Iris authentication | |
| Authentication | |
| | |

| Registering | 155 | Memory | 14 |
|-----------------------------------|----------|------------------------|-------|
| Iris authentication LED | | Messaging | |
| Iris registration camera | 30 | Microphone | |
| | | microSD card | |
| J | | Erasing data | 14 |
| Jump to Camera | 1/16 | File transfers | 17! |
| Julip to Califera | 140 | Formatting | 14 |
| K | | Installing | |
| | | Operation from a PC | 17! |
| Kazashite-Link compatible service | | Photo transfer (PTP) | |
| Keep lit when held | | Removing | 3! |
| Keyboard | | Miracast | 17: |
| External keyboard | | Mouthpiece | 3 |
| Handwritten input | | Multi-connection | |
| Numeric keypad | | My Magazine | 6 |
| QWERTY keypad | 41 | My phone number | |
| | | My physical profile | |
| L | | My profile | |
| Languages & input | 160 | 7. | |
| Light | 30 | N | |
| Location data/GPS | 117 | Navigation bar | 40.16 |
| Location Setting | 118 | Network Mode | |
| Lock screen | 54 | Network operators | |
| LTE antenna section | 30 | Network operators | |
| | | Network service | |
| M | | NFC communication | |
| Mail | 80 82 86 | NFC Type Settings | |
| Make passwords visible | | NFC/Osaifu-Keitai Lock | |
| Manner mode | | Canceling | |
| Manner mode | | Notification icon | |
| Manner mode (Alarm) | | Notification panel | |
| Manner mode (Silent) | | Panel switch | |
| Maps | | Notifications | |
| Material | | Notifying caller ID | |
| iviateriai | 10 | Notifying caller in | 07, 7 |
| | • | 17 | |

| 73
41, 43
44
43
44
82
82, 85
85
85 | Add 2-sec pause Call settings Call volume Caller ID notification Emergency call Making a call Select prefix Suguden setting Phone memo ON/OFF | 7
7
 |
|--|---|---------------|
| | Phone memo list | 7 |
| 84 | Recording | |
| 84 | Setting | 7 |
| 83 | Phone ringtone | 14 |
| 83 | Phonebook | 7 |
| | Deleting | 7 |
| | Editing | 7 |
| 210
93
96
93
93 | Favorites | |
| l e | Registering group | |
| | Search | 7
16
13 |
| | | |

| Setting | Schedule | 119 |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|---------|
| Pinch38 | Displaying | 120 |
| Play Store91 | Registering | 119 |
| Deleting application92 | Screen brightness | |
| Installing application92 | Screen lock | |
| Playing video 113 | Locking | 53. 150 |
| Pointer speed | Setting unlock method | |
| Power key31 | Unlock | |
| Pre-installed applications61 | Screen locking sounds | |
| Print | Screen saver | |
| Proximity sensor30 | Screen timeout | |
| Public mode (power OFF) settings73 | Screenshot | |
| PUK code | Search | |
| 010 0000 | Google Search | |
| Q | Voice Search | |
| _ | Security | |
| QR code reader | Security unlock preference | |
| Reading | Fingerprint authentication | |
| QWERTY keypad41 | Iris authentication | 150 |
| R | Password | |
| ••• | Pattern | |
| Recent calls72 | Security code | |
| Recommended application64 | Touch/Swipe | |
| Rejecting calls with SMS69, 74 | Set up SIM card lock | |
| Remote operation settings73, 185 | Setting menu | |
| Reset 161 | Shooting setting for video | 120 |
| Resetting the network settings 137 | HDR mode | 112 |
| RGB sensor30 | Steady Video | |
| Roaming settings184 | Shooting settings for still image | |
| Network service (overseas) 185 | Camera Mode | |
| | Display grid | |
| S | Exposure/WB | |
| Safe data storage161, 162 | Face Beauty | |
| SAR | Flash | |
| 200 | 1 10311 | 103 |
| | | |

| HDR mode | 109 | Sound at start charging | 140 |
|------------------------------|---------|-----------------------------------|----------------|
| Location | 109 | Speaker | 30 |
| Picture Size | 108 | Specifications | 199 |
| Save | 109 | Spell check | 160 |
| SelfTimer | 109 | Split screen | 50 |
| Touch shutter | 109 | Status bar | 50 |
| Shooting settings for video | 111 | Status icon | 5 [.] |
| Camera Mode | 111 | Still image shooting screen | 10! |
| Light | 111 | Stopping the packet communication | 136 |
| Movie Size | 111 | Storage | 144, 168 |
| Saving location | 112 | Internal shared storage | 14 |
| Shooting settings for videos | | SD card | 14 |
| Exposure/WB | 112 | Storage type | 150 |
| SIM unlock | | Strap hole | 3 [.] |
| Sleep | 138 | Suguden | 74 |
| Sleep mode | 53 | Super ATOK ULTIAS settings | 4! |
| Slide | 38 | Conversion setting | 4! |
| Slide display | 50 | Design | 40 |
| Slide spot | 54 | Handwritten input | 4! |
| Slide-in function | 54, 164 | Initialize | 40 |
| Slide-in launcher | 54 | Numeric keypad | 4! |
| Slot cap | 31 | Open source software license | 40 |
| Smart Lock | 155 | Operation sound/Vibrate | 4! |
| SMS | 80 | OWERTY keypad | 4! |
| Creating | 80 | Set selection list | 40 |
| Deleting | 81 | Super ATOK ULTIAS | 40 |
| Displaying | 81 | ULTIAS Feature select | 4! |
| Forwarding | 81 | Utility | 40 |
| Receiving | 81 | Swipe | 38 |
| Replying | 81 | Switching input method | 4 |
| Sending | 80 | | |
| Setting | 82 | T | |
| Software Update | 196 | Тар | 35 |
| Sound | 140 | Tap & pay | |
| | 00 | | |
| | | | |

| Task manager | 56 |
|---------------------------------|-----|
| Tethering | |
| Bluetooth tethering | 134 |
| Easy settings | |
| USB tethering | 133 |
| Wi-Fi tethering | 133 |
| Text-to-speech output160, | 167 |
| Time | |
| ToruCa | 97 |
| Touch and go display | 139 |
| Touch and hold | |
| Touch and sleep | 137 |
| Touch panel | 30 |
| Notes | 37 |
| Using | 37 |
| Touch sounds | 141 |
| Touch-tone signals | 70 |
| Trademarks | |
| Troubleshooting | 186 |
| Trusted credentials | 156 |
| Turn off sound when flipped140, | 146 |
| Turning power off | |
| Turning power on | 37 |
| TV | 97 |
| Activating | 99 |
| Channel setting | 104 |
| End | 99 |
| Link | 100 |
| Playing programs | |
| Recording | 102 |
| Reserving recording | 101 |
| Reserving watching | 101 |
| Setting | 103 |
| Signal | 98 |
| | |

| Using TV | 97 |
|--|-----|
| TV antenna cable F01 | |
| TV watching screen | |
| Ţ | |
| U | |
| Unknown sources | 157 |
| Unlocking PUK | 158 |
| USB tethering | 133 |
| USB Type-C jack | 30 |
| Useful tools | 162 |
| Users | 145 |
| Using overseas | 180 |
| After returning to Japan | 18 |
| Checking | 18′ |
| Communication services | |
| Making a call in the country you stay | 183 |
| Receiving a call in the country you stay | 183 |
| Settings | 18′ |
| | |
| V | |
| Vibrate on ring | |
| Vibrate on tap | 14′ |
| Video call | |
| Making a call | 67 |
| Receiving a call | |
| Video correction | 138 |
| Video shooting screen | |
| Viewing still image | |
| Voice input | |
| Voice Search | |
| Settings | |
| Voicemail service | |
| Volume key | 3′ |

| VPNAdding | |
|--|-----|
| Connecting | |
| Disconnecting | |
| VPN (Virtual Private Network) | 135 |
| W | |
| Warranty | |
| Waterproofness/Dustproofness, shock resistance | 23 |
| Wi-Fi | 127 |
| Adding | 128 |
| Advanced Wi-Fi settings | 131 |
| Configuring | 131 |
| Connecting | 127 |
| Connecting easily | 128 |
| Deleting | 128 |
| Scanning | |
| Wi-Fi Auto ON/OFF | 130 |
| Wi-Fi sleep policy | |
| Wi-Fi antenna section | 30 |
| Wi-Fi Direct | 129 |
| Wi-Fi tethering | |
| WORLD CALL | |
| WORLD WING | 180 |
| Numeric | |
| 1Seg | 97 |

Use mobile phone with your manners!

Remember to be courteous to others when you use your terminal

Always turn OFF your terminal in cases below

■ In a place where use of mobile phone is prohibited Follow the instructions of each airline or medical facility for the use of mobile phones on their premises. Power off the terminal in a place where the use is prohibited.

Always set Public mode in cases below

When driving

There is a penalty for holding or using the terminal while driving.

However, absolutely necessary cases such as rescue of a sick person and maintaining public safety are exempted.

In public places such as a theater, movie theater or art museum

Using the terminal in quiet public places will likely bother other people.

Match the volume of voice and ring alert to your location

- In a quiet place like a restaurant or hotel lobby, pay attention to the volume of your voice etc. when using the terminal.
- In town areas, while using the terminal, be sure not to block foot or car traffic.

Consider privacy

Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

Do not use smartphone while walking

- Use of smartphone while walking on station platform or road makes your eyesight extremely narrow.
- Stop and stay in a safe place and then use smartphone.

Functions designed for public use

Your terminal has a number of useful functions designed for public use, such as a setting that instructs your terminal not to answer incoming calls and the ability to set the terminal for silent operation.

- ◆ Public mode (Power OFF)→P73 The caller hears an announcement notifying that the receiver is in a place requiring power-off of mobile phone, and the call is disconnected.
- Vibrate→P74 Vibrates when there is an incoming call.
- Manner mode
 P141
 Eliminates all sounds the terminal makes, such as ring alert
 and keypad/touch sound (Shutter sound cannot be
 eliminated)

And you can use optional services such as Voice Mail Service, Call Forwarding Service, etc.→P73

€N/UCYEU-UNI

We collect old phones, etc. regardless of brands and manufacturers. Bring them to your nearest docomo Shop.

-2*Items to be collected: mobile phones, PHS, battery packs, chargers, desktop holders (regardless of brands and manufacturers)

Online Procedures, Confirmation of Subscription, etc.

From the terminal dメニュー (dmenu)→"My docomo (お客様サポート) (My docomo (Customer support))" (in Japanese only)
From PCs My docomo (https://www.nttdocomo.co.in/mydocomo/) (in Japanese only)

- There are cases where the site may not be available depending on system maintenance or subscription, etc.
- You need "Network security code" and "ID/Password of d ACCOUNT" to use "My docomo".

For inquiries while overseas (for loss, theft, malfunction, etc.)

From DOCOMO mobile phones

Display "+" -81-3-6832-6600 (toll free)

(To enter "+", touch and hold the "0" key)

* You can use international call access numbers instead of "+" to call

From land-line phones

International call access number for the country you stay

-81-3-6832-6600 (charges apply)

- * You are charged a call fee to Japan.
- * For international call access numbers, refer to NTT DOCOMO website.

Business hours: 24 hours (open all year round)

- Please confirm the phone number before you dial.
- If you lose your terminal or have it stolen, immediately take the steps necessary for suspending the use of the terminal.
- If the terminal you purchased is damaged, bring your terminal to a repair counter specified by DOCOMO after returning to Japan.

General Inquiries

0120-005-250 (toll free)

* Service available in: English, Portuguese, Chinese, Spanish * Unavailable from part of IP phones

(Business hours: 9:00 a.m. to 8:00 p.m.)

From DOCOMO mobile phones (In Japanese only)

(No prefix) 151 (toll free)

* Unavailable from land-line phones, etc.

From land-line phones (In Japanese only)

0120-800-000 (toll free)

* Unavailable from part of IP phones.

(Business hours: 9:00 a.m. to 8:00 p.m. (open all year round))

Please confirm the phone number before you dial.

For Applications or Repairs and After-Sales Service, please contact the above-mentioned information center or the docomo Shop etc. near
you on the NTT DOCOMO website.

NTT DOCOMO website https://www.nttdocomo.co.ip/english/





Don't forget your mobile phone ... or your manners! When using your mobile phone in a public place, don't forget to show common courtesy and consideration for others around you.





Sales: NTT DOCOMO, INC.

Manufacturer: FUJITSU CONNECTED TECHNOLOGIES LIMITED

2017.11 (1st Edition) CA92002-9573

Technical Inquiries & Repairs

From DOCOMO mobile phones (In Japanese only)

(No prefix) 113 (toll free)

From land-line phones (In Japanese only)

(Business hours : 24 hours (open all year round))

* Unavailable from land-line phones etc

0120-800-000 (toll free)

* Unavailable from part of IP phones